

KINGVE

TOGETHER IN ROBOTICS

MEET LINK6

Contents

Link 6 overview	1
Intended use	2
Unintended uses	3
Warranty information	3
Applicable firmware	
Technical specifications	б
Schematics and dimensions	8
Effective workspace	
Components	12
Base	12
Specifications and dimensions of the base of the arm	13
Actuators	
Wrist interface overview	
Force torque sensor	
Mechanical interface	
Electrical interface	
Wrist interface compatibility	22
Controller overview	
Controller mounting interface	26
Controller electrical and communications interface	
Teach pendant overview	
Industrial I/O panel overview	32
Industrial I/O power supply	
General-purpose digital inputs	35
General-purpose digital outputs	
Analog inputs	
Analog outputs	
Emergency stop inputs	
Teach pendant bypass inputs	
Safety-rated digital inputs	
Wrist I/O	43

Wrist power supply	.44
General-purpose inputs and outputs for the wrist	. 45
Wrist RS-485	45

Precautions	
Safety directives and warnings	48
Risk assessment	
Safety equipment	52
Assessments before using the robot	
Stop categories	
Emergency stop	
Move robot arm without power	
Safety functions	54
List of safety functions	54
Stopping times and distances	
Diagnostic coverage	61
Safety modes	61
State timelines of safety functions	62
SF01 Emergency stop timeline	63
SF02 Protective stop timeline	64
SF03 Joint position monitoring timeline	65
SF04 Joint speed monitoring timeline	67
SF05 Monitored stop timeline	68
SF06 Protection zone monitoring timeline	69
SF07 TCP and Elbow speed monitoring timeline	
Robot safety protections and limits	72
Joint limits	
Tool center point limits	74
Elbow limits	
Protection zones	77
Tool sphere	
Zones pane	79
Zone shapes	
Exporting or importing all zones into one file	
Visualization pane	
Safety I/O	
	88

	Safety outputs	91
	State timelines of safety outputs	94
	Installing the drive power indicator	97
Safe	ety checksums	98
	Parameters that are the basis for the safety checksum	98
Arm	calibration	100
	Exporting calibration files	102
	Importing arm calibration files	103
	Preventing an unrecoverable fault	104
	Recovering from an unrecoverable fault	105

113

Hardware installation	126
Inside the Link 6 boxes	
Unpacking the arm	
Considerations before installing the arm	
Base force reactions	
Installing the arm directly to a surface	
Installing the arm on a third-party adapter plate	
Unpacking the controller	133
Considerations before installing the controller	
Installing the controller on a flat surface	136

Connecting the arm to the controller	
Installing the teach pendant mount	
Connecting the teach pendant to the controller	
Connecting power to the controller	
Connecting a computer to the controller	
Connecting a network to the controller	
Initial software setup	143
Supported client devices	
Logging in	
Repositioning the arm to use it for the first time	
Kortex Web App layout	
Menu pages	
Open Source software packages	
Indicators, user profile, and power	
Robot control panel	
System information	
Robot networking and communication	
User management	
Adding a user	
Editing a user	
Deleting a user	
Elevating permissions	
Remote access	
Upgrading software	
Consequences of downgrading from v3.2 to v3.1	
Plugins	
Getting the plugins for the robot	
Installing plugins	
Uninstalling plugins	
Overview of working with plugins	
Configuring tools	
Adding tools	
Other actions that can be taken on tools	
Configurations for the robot settings	
Configuring the controller for robot controls	
Configuring the arm for robot controls	
Configuring the force torque	

Restoring factory defaults	
Maintenance mode	
Logs	
Exporting logs	
Generated events	
Configuration files	
Backing up the current configuration and setup	
Common errors when backing up configuration files	
Loading configuration files	
Collision detection	
Energy limitation	
Contact force reduction	
ual programming	212

Visual programming	212
Overview of the Program page	212
Variables	215
Examples of JSON statements	.219
Adding a variable global to all programs from the Variables page	220
Variable Management page	224
Adding a variable global to all programs from the Variable Manager page	228
Adding a variable global only to a specific program	.234
Selecting a variable	240
Deleting a variable that is being used in a program	242
Core tiles	243
Common core parameters in the Tile Configuration pane	245
Basic: Set tile parameters	246
Basic: Wait tile parameters	.247
Basic: Condition tile parameters	.248
Basic: Loop tile parameters	.249
Basic: Message tile parameters	252
Robot: Matrix tile parameters	.253
Robot: Change Payload tile parameters	.257
Robot: Waypoints tile parameters	260
Waypoint parameters	260
Constraint parameters	267
Custom Frame parameters	.272
Debug tools for waypoints	.273
Industrial I/O: tiles	277

Industrial I/O: Read Input tile parameters	
Industrial I/O: Set Output tile parameters	
Industrial I/O: Wait for Input tile parameters	
Hand Guiding panel	
Jog Cartesian panel	
Translation and rotation from the Jog Cartesian panel	
Additional settings	
Jog Angular panel	
Additional settings	
Program creation	
Creating a program	
Debug panel overview	
Debugging a program	
Program is ready to use	
Running a program in Automatic mode	
Running a program in Hold-to-Run mode	
Diagnostics	
Built-in self tests	
Built-in self tests Status of safety functions Status of the controller	
Status of safety functions	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist Robot monitoring Overview pane of the Monitoring page	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist Robot monitoring	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist Robot monitoring Overview pane of the Monitoring page Detailed pane of the Monitoring page	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist Robot monitoring Overview pane of the Monitoring page Detailed pane of the Monitoring page Event notifications	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist Robot monitoring Overview pane of the Monitoring page Detailed pane of the Monitoring page Event notifications	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist Robot monitoring Overview pane of the Monitoring page Detailed pane of the Monitoring page Event notifications	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist Robot monitoring Overview pane of the Monitoring page Detailed pane of the Monitoring page Event notifications Plugins Arm plugin Industrial I/O Plugin	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist Robot monitoring Overview pane of the Monitoring page Detailed pane of the Monitoring page Event notifications Plugins. Arm plugin Industrial I/O Plugin Controller analog on the Industrial I/O plugin page	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist Robot monitoring Overview pane of the Monitoring page Detailed pane of the Monitoring page Event notifications Plugins. Arm plugin Industrial I/O Plugin Controller analog on the Industrial I/O plugin page Controller digital inputs on the Industrial I/O plugin page	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist Robot monitoring Overview pane of the Monitoring page Detailed pane of the Monitoring page Event notifications Plugins. Arm plugin Industrial I/O Plugin Controller analog on the Industrial I/O plugin page Controller digital inputs on the Industrial I/O plugin page	
Status of safety functions Status of the controller Status of the actuators Status of the wrist Robot monitoring Overview pane of the Monitoring page Detailed pane of the Monitoring page Event notifications Plugins. Arm plugin Industrial I/O Plugin Controller analog on the Industrial I/O plugin page Controller digital inputs on the Industrial I/O plugin page	

External emergency stop station	
Installing an external emergency stop station	
External 3-position enabling device	
Installing the external 3-position enabling device	335
Maintenance	337
Consumables	
Preventive maintenance	
Daily maintenance	
Weekly maintenance	339
Quarterly maintenance	
Yearly maintenance	
Unscheduled maintenance	
Fastener maintenance	341
Servicing	343
Disposal	
Troubleshooting	345
Troubleshooting Issues related to hardware	
Issues related to hardware	345 345
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power?	345 345 345
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on?	
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on? Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself?	
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on? Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself? Why is the snapshot button not working?	
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on? Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself? Why is the snapshot button not working? Why is my tool not working?	
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on? Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself? Why is the snapshot button not working? Why is my tool not working? Emergency stop	
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on? Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself? Why is the snapshot button not working? Why is my tool not working? Emergency stop Why is the wrist enabling device not enabling Hand Guiding mode?	
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on? Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself? Why is the snapshot button not working? Why is my tool not working? Emergency stop Why is the wrist enabling device not enabling Hand Guiding mode? Why is the controller hot?	
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on? Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself? Why is the snapshot button not working? Why is my tool not working? Emergency stop Why is the wrist enabling device not enabling Hand Guiding mode? Why is the controller hot? Why did my robot collide with the tool installed on its end effector?	
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on? Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself? Why is the snapshot button not working? Why is my tool not working? Emergency stop Why is the wrist enabling device not enabling Hand Guiding mode? Why is the controller hot? Why did my robot collide with the tool installed on its end effector? Why is my tool, connected to the M8 connector, not responding?	
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on? Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself? Why is the snapshot button not working? Why is my tool not working? Emergency stop Why is the wrist enabling device not enabling Hand Guiding mode? Why is the wrist enabling device not enabling Hand Guiding mode? Why is the controller hot? Why did my robot collide with the tool installed on its end effector? Why is my tool, connected to the M8 connector, not responding? Why does my robot refuse to move in a particular direction?	
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on? Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself? Why is the snapshot button not working? Why is my tool not working? Emergency stop Why is the wrist enabling device not enabling Hand Guiding mode? Why is the controller hot? Why is the controller hot? Why did my robot collide with the tool installed on its end effector? Why is my tool, connected to the M8 connector, not responding? Why does my robot refuse to move in a particular direction? Why is my teach pendant only displaying a console?	
Issues related to hardware	
Issues related to hardware Why does the controller have no power? Why is the robot not powering on? Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself? Why is the snapshot button not working? Why is my tool not working? Emergency stop Why is the wrist enabling device not enabling Hand Guiding mode? Why is the controller hot? Why did my robot collide with the tool installed on its end effector? Why did my robot collide with the tool installed on its end effector? Why does my robot refuse to move in a particular direction? Why is my teach pendant only displaying a console? Why are my digital outputs not operating at 24 V? Issues related to safety elements	

Why are my digital outputs not operating at 24 V?	.352
Issues related to modes of operation	.352
Why is Manual mode disabled?	352
Why can the robot not exit Recovery mode?	352
Why is my robot not moving even if it is in an operating mode where it	
should be possible?	353
Issues related to plugins	354
Why can I not configure Industrial I/Os?	.354
Issues related to programs and programming	. 354
Why can I not select a variable in the Select Variable page?	. 354
Why are tiles missing in the visual programming interface?	355
Why can I not find a program in the list of programs?	.356
Why do some of the tiles of an imported program show a question mark?	356
Why are the Industrial I/O tiles not loading?	.356
Why is my program running, but not making progress?	.357
Why is my robot extremely slow?	357
Issues related to Kortex Web App	358
Why is the robot not going to the programmed position?	358
Why is the computer not connecting to Kortex Web App?	359
Why is Kortex Web App not responding on my computer?	360
Why is there a pop-up requesting visual confirmation of the robot pose after	
the robot reboots?	. 360
Why do the +/- buttons on the wrist not work with my tool?	361

Glossary
A
B
С
D
E
F
G
Н
I
J
K
L
M

N	
O	
P	
R	
S	
Т	
U	
W	
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	

Link 6 overview

The Link 6 is an arm with six degrees of freedom (DoF), a powerful controller, and a Kinova teach pendant. It works under the Kortex software framework and Kortex Web App. Kortex Web App works on the teach pendant and from a web browser on a remote computer.

Each axis is a joint and the part of the arm between each joint is a link. The robot parts from base to wrist are referred to as the arm. The arm has six parts. The remaining parts of the robot are the controller and the teach pendant.



Figure 1: Link 6



The robot can be manipulated by one hand. The wrist has a set of buttons on it that are used for toggling between Cartesian and Joint Hand Guiding, waypoint capturing, moving the arm, and end effector actions. With these buttons on the wrist, it is easy to teach the robot the movements it needs to learn.

Thanks to the modular design of the robot, a variety of optional interfaces are available to connect end effectors. Each of these optional interfaces has no visible cables. Also, Kinova offers a variety of optional parts.

- Kinova wall mount kit attaches the controller to walls.
- Graphics card kit is required, in some cases, for cameras and the vision module.
- Robotiq Adapter attaches directly to the wrist and is compatible with multiple tools by Robotiq.
- Gigabit Ethernet Adapter *flange* attaches directly to the wrist and is compatible with third-party Vision adapters.
- The flange attaches to the OnRobot ISO adapter, as well as the OnRobot RG2 Gripper.
- *Emergency stop* attaches to the controller.
- One or more enabling devices attach to the controller.

The end of the arm has a force torgue sensor built into it. With the force torgue sensor, hand guiding Link 6 is smooth.



At the end of the arm is an end effector. The end effector may be a gripper, polishing disk, nail gun, screwdriver, tool changer, and so on. It is the only part of the robot that is in direct contact with the piece being manipulated.

The controller can be considered the brain of the robot. It is stored on an accessible location on the floor, table, wall, or in a cabinet; store it wherever it makes it easy to power on or off the robot. Some installations of the controller require the optional Kinova wall mount kit.

Related topics

Components on page 12 Accessories on page 333

Intended use

Link 6 is intended for typical industrial applications to manipulate objects and tools in a nonexplosive environment.

To ensure safe operation for all intended uses, perform a risk assessment and mitigate all the risks to a safe, acceptable level. Use the robot in industrial applications only and within the stated specifications.

There are many different types of industrial applications in which Link 6 can be used.

- Material handling
- Small parts assembly
- Machine tending
- Packaging
- Palletizing
- Bin picking
- Screw driving

Important: The list of industrial applications is not exhaustive.

When deciding how you can use the robot, keep in mind that the arm, controller, and teach pendant of Link 6 is designed to have an ingress protection rating of 54 (IP54). The first number indicates the level of protection from objects, such as dust; the second number indicates the level of protection from water. Therefore, an IP rating of 54 indicates two things about Link 6.

- The robot is designed to have limited protection against dust and other small objects. It is limited because some small particles may still enter the robot. However, the robot can still operate with some particles in it.
- The robot is designed to be protected from splashes of water from all directions.



Related topics

Safety on page 47

Unintended uses

Link 6 is not intended to work in certain applications because it can damage the robot system, or lead to serious injury to, or death of, the user.

Kinova is not responsible for any damage caused to the robot system when the robot is not used as intended.

There are many different types of industrial applications in which Link 6 cannot be used.

- Flammable environments
- Radioactive environments
- · Liquid environments, including water
- Outdoor climate conditions
- Medical applications
- Life critical applications

There also are a number of uses that can damage the robot and cause injury or death.

- Using the robot without first performing a risk assessment
- · Climbing on the robot while it is in its box or on the robot when it is not in its box
- Standing on the controller
- Placing liquids, such as cups of coffee or tea, directly on the controller



DANGER: Do not use the robot in conditions that do not conform with the ingress protection rating of IP54.



Important: The lists of unintended uses is not exhaustive. There are many more unintended uses that are not cited.



Important: Link 6 does not support Power and Force Limiting (PFL) collaborative mode as described by ISO TS 15066.



Notice: Kinova assumes no liability of any kind if safety measures are not followed. Please read all the information concerning this product before using it.

Warranty information

Subject to the terms of this clause, Kinova warrants to the End User that the Products are free from defects in materials and workmanship that materially affect their performance for a period



of twelve (12) months from the date Kinova ships the Products to the End User, known as the "Delivery Date".

Kinova agrees to repair or replace, at Kinova's discretion, all Products that fail to conform to the relevant warranty provided that:

- 1. notification of the defect is received by Kinova within the specified warranty period;
- **2.** the allegedly defective Products are returned to Kinova, at the End User's expense, with prior authorization from Kinova within thirty (30) days of the defect becoming apparent;
- **3.** the Products have not been altered, modified, or subject to misuse, incorrect installation or maintenance, neglect, accident, or damage caused by excessive current or having been used with incompatible parts;
- 4. the End User is not in default under any of its obligations under this Agreement;
- **5.** replaced Products must have the benefit of the applicable warranty for the remainder of the applicable warranty period.

If Kinova diligently repairs or replaces the Products in accordance with this section, it will be deemed to have no further liability for a breach of the relevant warranty.

Allegedly defective Products returned to Kinova in accordance with this contract will be returned to the End User if found by Kinova on examination not to be defective. Kinova may charge a fee for examination and testing. The warranty cannot be assigned or transferred, and is to the sole benefit of the End User. Where the Products have been manufactured and supplied to Kinova by a third party, any warranty granted to Kinova in respect of the Products may be passed on to the End User. Kinova is entitled in its absolute discretion to refund the price of the defective Products in the event that such price has already been paid.

Applicable firmware

The current version of the guide reflects a specific version of the firmware used in Link 6.

Whenever there is a change in the firmware, there usually is a change in the user guide. Always make sure the guide is matching the installed firmware.

If you are using an earlier firmware or software version, some of the features discussed in the document may not apply to your installation. To upgrade firmware and software, download the packages from the product technical resource page on the Kinova website and install them from the Kortex Web App **Upgrade** page.



Table 1: Firmware associated with the guide r2.0

Software	Version
Firmware	3.2.0

Technical specifications

The Link 6 is a modern, robust, collaborative-capable robot for all industries that want to benefit from automation.

Table 2: General

Degrees of freedom (DoF)	6
Continuous payload	6.0 kg
(full range, at 200 mm from wrist, for optimal performance)	
Maximum semi-dextrous reach	1000 mm
Maximum Cartesian translation speed	1.85 m/s
Repeatability according to ISO 9283 specification	up to 0.1 mm
Power supply voltage and frequency	110-240 VAC, 50-60 Hz
Recommended overcurrent protection device rating	15 A at 120 VAC
	7.5 A at 240 VAC
	SCCR 5 kA
	opens in less than 400 ms
Ingress protection rating (arm and controller)	IP54
Ambient operating temperature	0 °C to 40 °C
Maximum storage and operating humidity levels (non- condensing)	15% to 90%
Arm weight (with 5 m cable)	23.45 kg
Arm materials	Aluminum, ABS plastic
Installation orientation	All
Acoustic noise level	70 dBA
Robot base footprint diameter	149 mm
Lifetime	35000 hrs

Table 3: Integrated force torque sensor

Range force/torque Fx, Fy, Fz, Tx, Ty, Tz $200\ N$ / $20\ N{\cdot}m$

Repeatability force/torque Fx, Fy, Fz, Tx, Ty, Tz 0.5 N / 0.05 N·m



7			
7			
/			
/			

Table 4: Actuators

Joint 1, 2, 3 range	± 357°, 200 °/s	3
Joint 4, 5, 6 range	± 357°, 320 °/s	3
Actuators sensors	Redundant po torque	sition, current, voltage and estimated
Table 5: Interfaces		
Controller interfaces	USB 3.0, Ether	net
Controller I/O	Digital: 16 inpu redundant saf	uts (8 redundant safe), 16 outputs (8 e)
	General purpo	se analog: 4 programmable input/output
	General purpo	se digital: 8 inputs, 8 outputs
Wrist I/O	Digital: 8 prog	rammable input/output
	Analog: 2 programmable input/output	
	Modbus RTU, 24 V supply @ 4 A	
ist - Mechanical Flange ISO 940		09-1-50-4-M6
Table 6: Controller Output		454
Controller dimensions (without covers, fe		454 mm x 208 mm x 395 mm
Controller dimensions (with covers; witho protrusions)	out feet and	
Controller weight (approx.)		17.6 kg
Processor		Intel® Core™ i7 processor ¹
Optional GPU		Up to NVIDIA RTX™ 3090
Memory		RAM: 8 GB DDR4
		Storage: 128 GB SSD
Table 7: Teach pendant		

Weight (approx.)2 kg	

¹ Intel, the Intel logo, and Intel Core are trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries.



Table 8: Safety

Notice: All safety specifications are currently in progress.

Certification	Developed according to UL1740, as well as ISO 10218-1:2011, and EU directives
Safety functions	All safety functions <i>PLd</i> Cat3 (developed according to ISO 13849-1/-2:2015)

Table 9: Main accessories (optional parts)

Tool adapters with mounting hardware	Robotiq, OnRobot
	0.2 kg
E-stop button	0.2 kg

Related topics

Accessories on page 333

Schematics and dimensions

The dimensions of the *arm* and the *controller* are important for integration purposes. The arm must be placed such that it can perform the desired task safely.



Remember: Add the height of the *end effector* and its required workspace to Link 6, as well as the height of the surface on which the base is installed, for an accurate assessment of the amount of space required to install a robot.

Each joint can turn as much as +360° and -360°. Trying to turn more than that when manually *backdriving* the robot can break the internal wiring. The maximum amount each joint can turn can be modified on the **Joint Limits** in *Kortex Web App*.



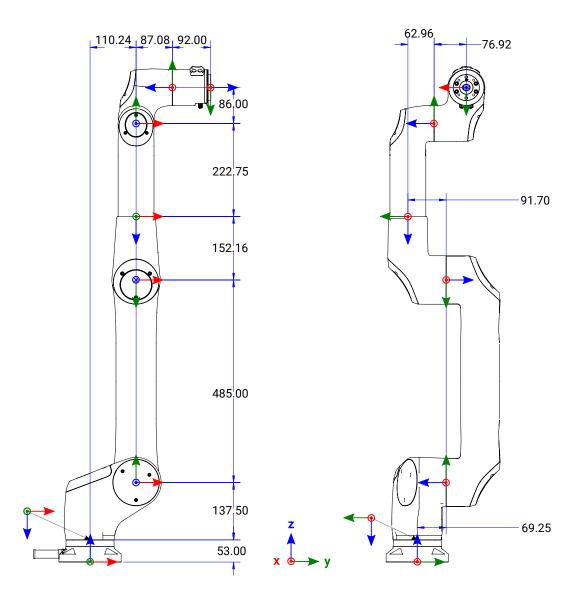


Figure 2: Arm dimensions in millimeters

The controller is a box that sits on a table, floor, wall, or in a cabinet near the arm.



Note: To install the controller in a cabinet or on a wall, use the Kinova wall mount. The wall mount is an optional accessory.



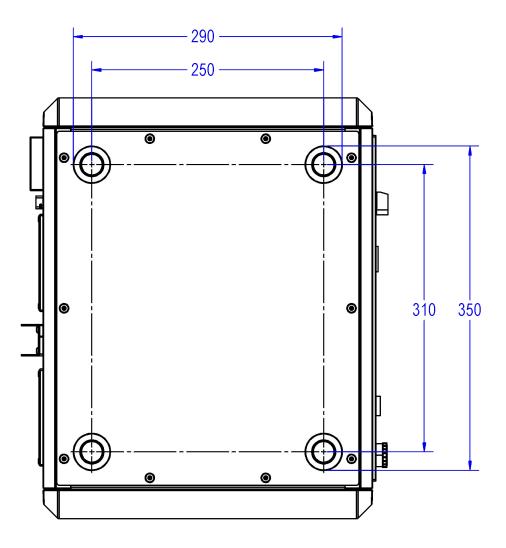


Figure 3: Controller dimensions in millimeters: Bottom view

Related topics

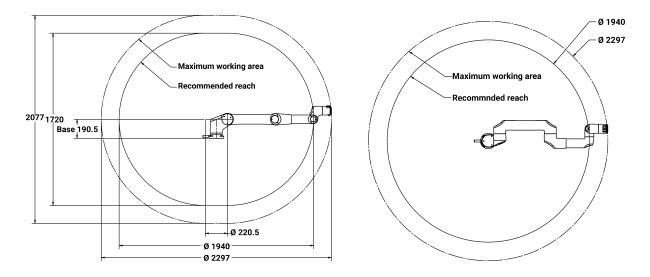
Safety directives and warnings on page 48 Move robot arm without power on page 54 Joint limits on page 73 Controller wall mount

Effective workspace

Link 6 requires enough space to work optimally without interference from other equipment and people when it is being integrated. The workspace is limited when the robot is used in a restricted environment by using protection zones in the *Kortex Web App*.



The robot uses an three-dimensional (3D) oval space. Take the capsule-shaped aspect of the recommended reach and maximum working area into account when integrating the robot so that Link 6 is used for optimal performance.





Related topics

Protection zones on page 77



Components

Each component of Link 6 can be considered as modular parts of the robot; each one has its specific role to play in the overall functionality.

There are several main components that make the robotic arm.

- Base
- Actuators
- Wrist
- Controller
- Teach pendant
- Industrial I/O panel
- Wrist I/O

Related topics Link 6 overview on page 1

Base

The *base* is mainly a mounting interface for the *arm*. It also is an electrical and mechanical interface for the first *actuator*.

The base has a cable that comes out of it; the cable is used to connect it to the *controller*. The minimum *bending radius* of the cable is 70 mm.



Attention: Never disconnect the cable between the controller and the arm when the controller is switched on.





Figure 5: The base component

Specifications and dimensions of the base of the arm

The *base* of the *arm* is designed to take into account the most common base sizes in industries, which facilitates swapping robotic arms.



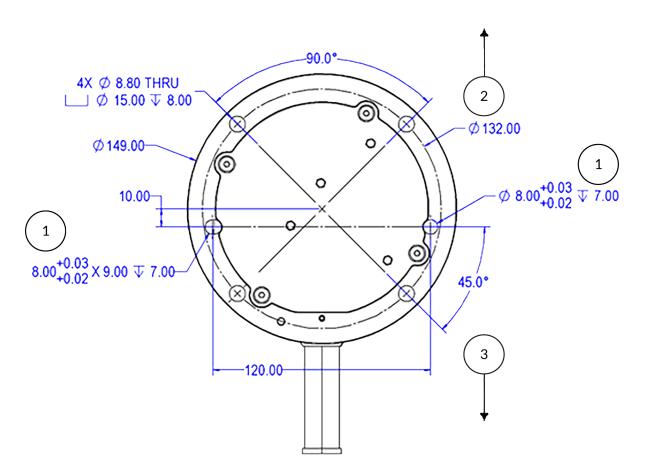


Figure 6: Top view of base dimensions in millimeters

1	Dowel hole feature for optional dowel pins
2	Front
3	Back

Related topics

Installing the arm directly to a surface on page 131 Installing the arm on a third-party adapter plate on page 133

Actuators

Link 6 has six *actuators*. The actuators come in two sizes. Three are large; three are small.

The Size 110 actuators have more load capacity than the Size 80 actuators. The Size 110 actuators are in the first three joints, when counting joints from the *base* upward. The Size 80 actuators have more speed capacity than the Size 110 actuators. All actuators include dual *microcontrollers* and various sensors to satisfy the Safety architecture category 3, *performance level D* monitoring architecture.



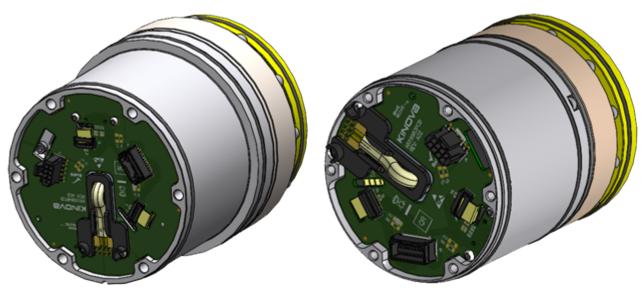


Figure 7: Size 110 actuator

Figure 8: Size 80 actuator

Each actuator also has a mechanical brake that is activated from the *firmware* or when the power is removed from the arm.

Wrist interface overview

The *wrist* is a modular component to which a variety of *end effectors* can be attached.

The wrist has buttons for the user to control the robot manually, buttons for the user to interact with *Kortex Web App*, and LED status indicators on the *wrist ring* to indicate the current state of the robot. The wrist also has a built-in force torque sensor. The sensor is used in different applications, such as *Cartesian* Hand Guiding. The sensor ensures the correct amount of force and torque is used with the tool.

The wrist interface is made of eight main parts, one of which is not visible.





Figure 9: Top of wrist

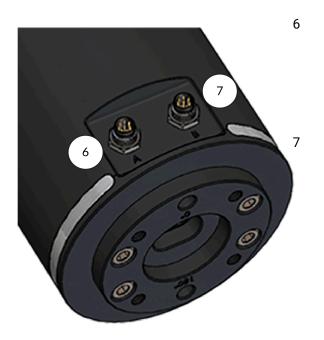


Figure 10: Bottom of wrist, M8 connectors

Connector A M8, 8 pin male connector 1 *RS-485* for Modbus RTU and 1 digital *I/O* 24 V Connector B M8, 8 pin male connector 2 analog I/O and digital I/O configuration

24 V





Central pogo pin connector Gigabit Ethernet RS-485 for Modbus *RTU* 24 V power

Figure 11: Bottom of wrist, pogo pin connector

Use the buttons on the top of the wrist to control the arm manually.



Figure 12: Buttons on the wrist

- 1 Hand Guiding mode Toggle button
- 2 Waypoint capture (Snapshot button)
- 3 Wrist enabling device
- 4 End effector actions

Press to toggle between *Cartesian* and *angular* Hand Guiding modes.

Press to capture a snapshot of the current location of the arm when you are editing a waypoint block during visual programming.

Press and hold while moving the arm to teach it the trajectory.

Press + and - as a way of using the actions of the end effectors as defined by the plugin of the end effector. For example, + can close grippers and can open grippers.



Related topics

Modes of operation of Link 6 on page 106 Robot lights and what they mean: a reference on page 122

Force torque sensor

The force torque sensor detects the force and torque applied to the end effector.

The six-axis force torque sensor is used in Hand Guiding mode to provide smooth and effortless experience.



Important: Applying forces above 1000 N and torques above 100 N \cdot m can permanently damaged the sensor.

Mechanical interface

The *wrist* is designed to connect to many different types of *end effectors*. Its interface complies to ISO 9409-1-50-4-M6.

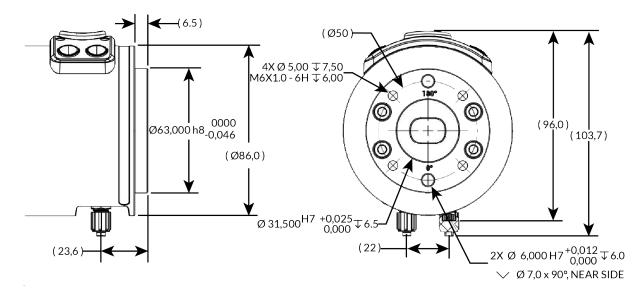


Figure 13: Mechanical interface of the wrist

Electrical interface

The *wrist* can connect electrically with *end effectors* through any combination of M8 8-pin connectors, central pogo pin, or all central pogo pins. Each of these methods is considered an interface.

Important: Accessories that connect to the wrist may or may not use the central connection of pogo pins. When the accessory does not use the central connection, keep



I



the cap on the central pins to avoid potential damage to the pads on the *printed circuit board* (*PCB*).

Figure 14: Central connector on wrist with cap on and with cap off

M8 connectors

Each of the two M8 connectors, which are compliant to IEC61131-2, have 8 pins. They provide 24 V power to whatever is attached to them. Connector A has two analog I/Os and four digital I/Os. Connector B has an *RS-485* interface and four digital I/Os. The digital I/Os of connector A and connector B can be configured independently so that you can have as many as eight different configurations.

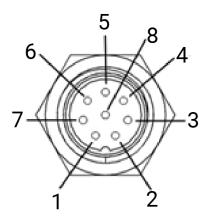


Figure 15: M8 connectors when facing the connector



Table 10: M8 Connectors

	Connector A	Connector B
Pin #	Signal	Signal
1	AIO_1	RS_485_P
2	AIO_2	RS_485_N
3	DIGITAL_I01	DIGITAL_IO1
4	DIGITAL_I02	DIGITAL_IO2
5	+24v	+24v
6	DIGITIAL_IO3	DIGITIAL_IO3
7	DIGITIAL_IO4	DIGITIAL_IO4
8	Ground	Ground

Remember: Always leave the caps on the M8 connectors when they are not being used.

Each analog I/O can be configured in four different ways.

Table 11: Analog interface configuration

Input or Output	Bottom Range	Upper Range	Notes
Input	0 V	10 V	
Input	4 mA	20 mA	
Output	0 V	10 V	for high impedance loads
Output	4 mA	20 mA	for high impedance loads

Each digital I/O can be configured in three different ways.

Table 12: Digital interface configurations

Input or Output	Bottom Range	Upper Range	Maximum
Input - low signal	-3 VDC	15 VDC	15 mA
Input - high signal	15 VDC	30 VDC	15 mA
Output 0	24 V	24V	600 mA



Pogo pins

In the center of the front of the wrist is an interface for pogo pins. It is supplied with 24 VDC, a dedicated Gigabit Ethernet, and *RS-485*. Each pin has an associated connector pin assignment, which can be seen in the pogo pin distribution table and figure.

Table 13:	Pogo	pin	distribution
-----------	------	-----	--------------

Pin Number	1	2	3	4	5	6
1						
2		Ground	BI_DD+	BI_DD-	Ground	
3	485_P	BI_DB-RX0-	24 V	24 V	BI_DA-TX0+	485_N
4	485_N	BI_DB-RX0+	24 V	24 V	BI_DA-TX0-	485_P
5		Ground	BI_DC-	BI_DC+	Ground	
6						

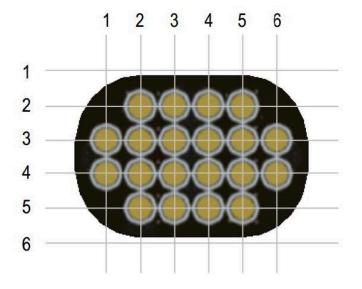


Figure 16: Pogo pin distribution

Available power in the wrist

The wrist can handle a maximum of 5 A among all M8 connectors plus central pogo pin. If one M8 connector is using 1 A, there is only 4 A left for the other interfaces.



Table 14: Power limitations

Electrical interface	Maximum continuous current	
M8-8 24 V pin	1.4 A	
Single pogo pin in center	2 A	
All pins in center	5 A	

Related topics

Wrist I/O on page 43

Wrist analog on the Industrial I/O plugin page on page 328

Wrist interface compatibility

The *wrist* must be compatible with the *end effector*, and other peripherals, attached to it.

Link 6 is compatible with a variety end effectors.

- Kinova accessories
 - Gigabit Ethernet adapter is an optional Kinova accessory that exposes an M12 X-Coded Gigabit Ethernet connector to connect easily to Ethernet devices.
 - Robotiq adapter is an optional Kinova accessory that interfaces both mechanically and electrically with Robotiq products. It has central pogo pins, which means no cables are required when attaching Robotiq products.
- ISO flange, which follows the standard ISO 9409-1-50-4-M6, interfaces with end effectors.

Related topics

Gigabit Ethernet adapter

Controller overview

The *controller* powers the *arm*. It stores all safety and non-safety parameters, the *firmware*, the trajectories, arm calibration, and so on.

Typically, the controller is connected to the *teach pendant* or an external computer that runs *Kortex Web App*. The controller sends commands to *actuators* that translate the commands into movements in the joints of the arm.

The controller can be placed on a table or floor. It also can be mounted on a wall.

The front of the controller has switches, buttons, and I/O ports.





Figure 17: Front of controller and its parts

1 Power knob

A light illuminates behind the power knob when electrical power is coming through the controller. The light acts as a visual cue of the state the robot is currently in.

2 ACK button

A light illuminates in the center of the button and acts as a visual cue of the state the robot is currently in and what action must be taken.

The button can be configured in **Systems** > **Robot** in Kortex Web App such that it is mandatory to be pressed when operating in Automatic mode.

3 Ethernet connector

Use the Ethernet connector in the front of the controller to connect to a laptop or computer.



Note: Alternatively, use the Ethernet connector on the back of the controller.

4 USB port

Use the port to insert a *USB* key that contains data that must be pushed onto the controller, such as a new software unit package.

Use the port to insert a USB key to store files that must be retrieved from the controller, such as an exported program.

5 TP connector

Plug the teach pendant into the connector marked TP to connect to the controller.

6 ARM connector

Plug the arm into the connector marked ARM to connect it to the controller.



It also has a panel on the side to access I/O wiring to connect to the arm of the robot. Inside the panel, there is a map of the location of each type of input and output.



Figure 18: Location of input and output connectors, which on the side panel

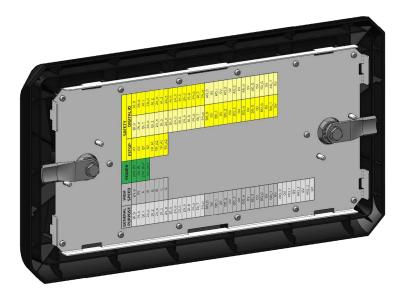


Figure 19: Map of input and output connectors is on the inside of the side panel



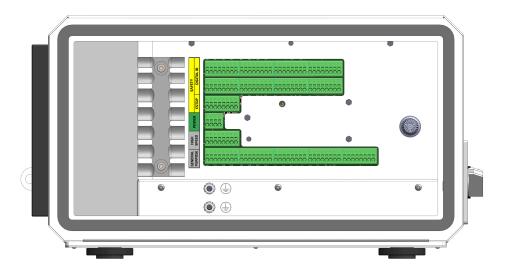


Figure 20: Input and output connectors are on the controller behind the side panel

The controller uses 12 VDC to power the internal computer units, which include *Safety Control Unit (SCU)*, *Main Processing Unit (MPU)*, I/O module, and optional *GPU*. It uses 48 VDC to power the arm.

Connect the controller to a power supply from its back.

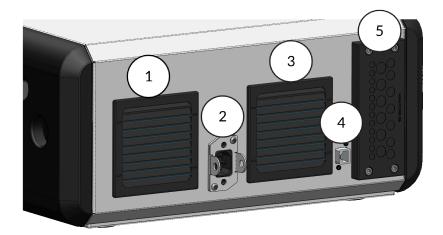


Figure 21: Back of controller

- 1 Fan-powered air exhaust
- 2 Electrical input for alternating current (AC) power

Unplug the *AC* power cord from the controller and use the brackets around the input to lock access to the power input whenever you perform maintenance on the robot.

- 3 Fanless air intake
- 4 *RJ45* Ethernet connector



Use the Ethernet connector at the back of the controller to connect to the network.

Note: Alternatively, use the Ethernet connector on the front of the controller.

5 Entry plate for I/O connectors

Puncture holes in the entry plate for the wires that need to connect to the controller. The entry plate protects the wires from dust and liquids.



Attention: Never disconnect any cable from the controller when it is switched on.

Controller mounting interface

The *controller* can be mounted on the floor or on the wall using either the feet mounting locations or an optional wall bracket.

An appropriate location to install the controller satisfies certain conditions.

- The underside of the installation surface is accessible.
- There is enough space to hold the controller.
- There is ample space around the controller for the airflow and access.



Figure 22: Mounting points of the controller

Related topics

Considerations before installing the controller on page 134 Installing the controller on a flat surface on page 136



Surface mount of controller

Dimensions of the *controller*, along with the location of its mounting points, is important to know before the robot is installed.

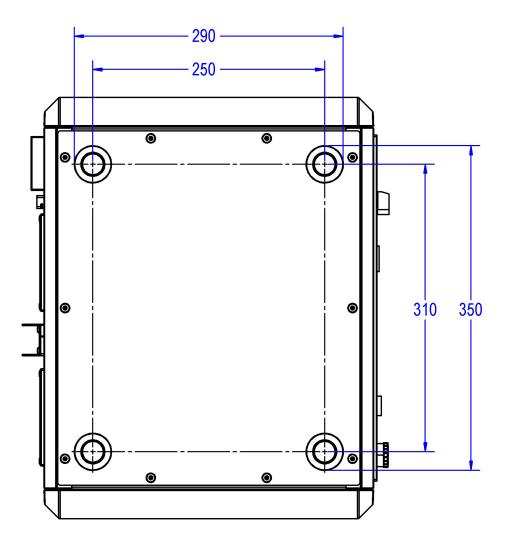


Figure 23: Mounting point measurements in millimeters

Related topics

Installing the controller on a flat surface on page 136

Controller electrical and communications interface

There is an access panel on the *controller* with a mapping of all the inputs and outputs listed directly on the back.

The access panel is on the side of the controller. It is held closed by two *camlocks*. Lock and unlock directions are indicated on the front of the side panel. A bent lip on the door aids in guiding the door on and off the rest of the box.





Figure 24: Controller side panel

1 Camlocks; Use 8 mm hex key to unlock and lock

On the inside of the panel is a mapping of the location of each input and output. See Figure 19: Map of input and output connectors is on the inside of the side panel on page 24.



GENERAL	HIGH			SAFETY	
PURPOSE	SPEED	POWER	ESTOP	DIGIT	
DI_0	24_0	24V_IN	A1	BI_0	AI_0
24_0	0V	OV_IN	A2	24_0	24_o
 DI_1	A	24V_0UT	B1	BI_1	AI_1
24_0	!A	0V_0UT	B2	24_0	24_o
DI_2	B	002001	 TP_A1	BI_2	AI_2
24_o	!B		TP_A2	24_o	24_o
DI_3	C		TP_B1	BI_3	AI_3
24_0	!C		TP_B2	24_0	24_o
 DI_4				BI_4	AI_4
 24_o				 24_o	 24_o
DI_5				BI_5	AI_5
24_o				24_o	24_o
DI_6				BI_6	AI_6
24_o				24_o	24_o
DI_7				BI_7	AI_7
24_o				24_o	24_o
DO_0				BO_0	A0_0
0V				0V	0V
D0_1				BO_1	A0_1
0V				0V	0V
D0_2				BO_2	A0_2
0V				0V	0V
DO_3				BO_3	A0_3
0V				0V	0V
D0_4				BO_4	A0_4
0V				0V	0V
D0_5				BO_5	A0_5
0V				0V	0V
D0_6				BO_6	A0_6
0V				0V	0V
D0_7				BO_7	A0_7
0V				0V	0V
AIO_0					
0V					
AIO_1					
0V					

Figure 25: Inputs and outputs map on the back of the panel



AIO_2 0V AIO_3 0V I/O connections are connected to the controller through the side panel. The *protective earth* mount points and fuse are also inside the side panel of the controller.

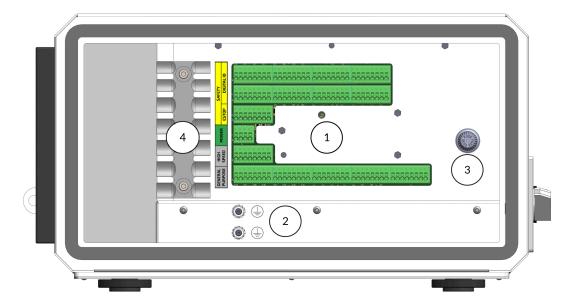


Figure 26: Inside the side panel of the controller

1 *I/Os*

From top to bottom, they are Safety Digital I/O, Safety Digital I/O, Safety ESTOP, Power, High Speed, and General Purpose

- 2 Protective earth stud
- 3 Fuse holder with a fuse held in it
- 4 Strain relief mounting plate, used to tie-wrap and secure cables; ensures not too much strain is applied to the terminal

Related topics

Controller digital outputs on the Industrial I/O plugin page on page 326 Controller digital inputs on the Industrial I/O plugin page on page 325

Teach pendant overview

The *teach pendant* is a hand-held device used by *integrators* to configure and program the motions of a robot and by *operators* to select a program to run.

A cable connects the teach pendant to the *controller*. The controller saves the information coming from the teach pendant.



30



The teach pendant is a touchscreen device with three buttons.

- Emergency stop
- Power
- Pendant enabling device

To configure trajectories and to operate the robot, use *Kortex Web App*.



Figure 27: Teach pendant front

E-stop button

Use the E-stop button to stop the robot in emergency situations.

Power button

Use the power button to turn on the teach pendant and access Kortex Web App.





3 Pendant enabling device

Press and hold the pendant enabling device in the middle position when you are using the Jog interface to manually move the robot or when you are running a program in Hold-to-Run mode.

Mounting interface

Align the mounting interface with the mounting hooks and slide the pendant on the mount.

Strap holding interface

Slide your hand underneath the strap such that your thumb rests on top of the strap.

CAUTION: Store all disconnected teach pendants in a safe location out of sight to prevent confusion between active and inactive emergency stops.



Attention: Never disconnect the cable from the teach pendant when the controller is switched on.

4

5

Related topics

Installing the teach pendant mount on page 138





Industrial I/O panel overview

The *controller* provides general-purpose electrical inputs and outputs from the Industrial I/O panel. It also provides safety-related electrical inputs and outputs from the I/O panel.



Note: Unless otherwise specified, all voltages and currents are direct current (DC).

The I/O panel is made of two parts.

The safety I/Os are always powered by the internal power supply. The safety I/Os are divided into two banks, bank A and bank B, for redundancy. Each bank consists of eight (8) digital inputs and eight (8) digital outputs. The safety I/Os also contain the connections for an Emergency stop button.

The general-purpose *I/Os* are powered by 24 V IN or 0 V IN terminals. The terminals can receive their power from 24 V OUT or 0 V OUT terminals, or from an external power supply. The general-purpose I/Os contains eight (8) digital inputs, eight (8) digital outputs, four (4) analog I/Os, and provisions for high-speed encoder inputs.

The *industrial I/O panel* is designed to comply with specific standards.

- Immunity requirements for safety I/O are designed for accordance with IEC 61000-6-7.
- Safety digital inputs and general-purpose digital inputs are designed for accordance with IEC 61131-2 Type 1 and Type 3.
- Safety digital outputs and general-purpose digital outputs are designed for accordance with IEC 61131-2 Type 1 and Type 3.
- electrostatic discharge (ESD), surge, and Electrical Fast Transient(EFT) are designed for accordance with IEC 62326-3-1.

Positive logic, which is current sinking input and current sourcing output, is supported on the panel. *Negative logic (NPN)* is not supported on the panel.

POWER	SAFETY					
POWER	ESTOP	FAL IO				
24V_IN	🖌 A1	BI_0	AI_0			
• OV_IN	A2	24_o	24_o			
24V_OUT	B 1	BI_1	Al_1			
• OV_OUT	B2	24_o	24_o			
	TP_A1	BI_2	AI_2			
	TP_A2	24_o	24_o			
	TP_B1	BI_3	AI_3			
	TP_B2	24_o	24_o			

Figure 29: Default factory setting with internal supply used and external E-stop bypassed



Table 15: Industrial I/O terminals

Mechanical	Min	Typical	Max	Unit
Conductor size (UL/cUL)	16		24	American Wire Gauge (AWG)
Conductor size (International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC))	0.2		1.5	mm ²
Stripping Length	8		10	mm
Terminal pitch		3.5		mm
Ferrule		Deutsches Institut für Normung (DIN) 46228-4		

Related topics

Installing the external 3-position enabling device on page 335

Industrial I/O power supply

Negative connections, labeled as 0V, are only for power and signaling. *protective earth (PE)* provides a low impedance path to ensure proper functioning in case of faults.

Be careful to connect power to the supplies correctly. When connected incorrectly, you can have undesirable side effects, such as reverse polarity, improper voltage levels, and improper frequencies. Link 6 is designed such that the 24V_IN and 0V_IN terminals are protected against reverse polarity.



Important: Use only DC signals.

Important: Do not exceed 28 V under any conditions.

During the power up sequence, all outputs are low and all inputs are not read.

During the power down sequence, all outputs shut down to the low state. The output from the *(E-stop)* enters a low state; it generates and *E-stop* event on all external devices connected to this terminal. All inputs are not read.

Table 16: Internal power

Internal 24 V power supply	Min	Typical	Max	Unit
Voltage	23.5	24	24.5	V



Internal 24 V power su	upply	Min Ty	pical	Max	Unit	
Current (total)				2	A	
Table 17: External po	ower					
External 24 V input requirements	Min	Typical	Max	Unit	Note	
Voltage	20	24	28	V	Designed for IEC 61131-2	
Current (total)			5	A	Fused internally at 10 A. The external power supply should be fused to a lesser value. It is recommended to fuse it at 5 A with an opening time that is less than 5 seconds.	

The terminal connections belong to the POWER terminal group.

Label	Purpose			
24V_IN	24 V input to supply the general purpose I/Os.			
0V_IN	0 V input to supply the general purpose I/Os.			
24V_OUT	24 V output of the internal I/O power supply.			
	Use only to jump with the terminal 24V_IN.			
	If an external power supply is used to connect on the 24V_IN terminal, leave the terminal unconnected.			
0V_OUT	0V output of the internal I/O power supply.			
	Use only to jump with the terminal 0V_IN.			
	If an external power supply is used to connect on the 0V_IN terminal, leave the terminal unconnected.			

Table 18: Power terminal connections

There are specific times when you can use the external power supply for general purpose I/Os.

- The total output current of the I/O panel exceeds 2 A.
- The general purpose *I/Os* must be supplied from the same power supply as the rest of the industry floor.





• The general purpose I/Os are tied to an external reference point, with up to 2000 V electrical isolation from the rest of the controller.

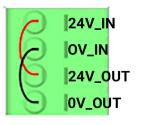


Figure 30: Internal power supply terminal connections

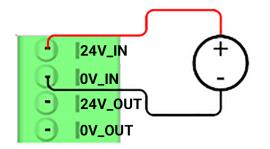


Figure 31: External power supply terminal connections

General-purpose digital inputs

There are no common points between channels. Each input has its own associated 24 V wetting port.

The panel may not work properly when there is a miswired condition coming from any other location on the panel; this type of miswired condition does not lead to any permanent damage. When the miswired condition is fixed, the panel starts working.



Important: The panel may be damaged if the miswiring comes from an external device.



Important: Miswiring issues does not apply to the 24 V power supply output.

There are isolation potentials between a channel and other circuits, including earth, as well as between channels under normal operation.

There is no hardware state indicator for general-purpose digital points.

There are side effects when you withdraw or insert an input module that is under power.

There is an additional external load when interconnecting inputs and outputs.

Table	19:	Digital	inputs
-------	-----	---------	--------

Digital inputs	Min	Typical	Max	Unit	Note
Low state voltage	-3	0	5	V DC	
High state voltage	11	24	30	V DC	
Current		2.0	2.6	mA	





Digital inputs	Min	Typical	Max	Unit	Note
Voltage drop					
Function					Current sinking
IEC 61131-2 Type		1, 3			Digital input type 1 and 3 designed for accordance with IEC 61131-2

Each wetting port is designed to provide the power needed for a single input point. Do not use it as a generic power source.

The terminal connections belong to the GENERAL PURPOSE terminal group.

Table 20: Digital input terminal connections

Label	Purpose
DI_n (n=[0-7]	Terminal points for digital input
24_o	Wetting port for each digital input
	Each input has its own wetting port.

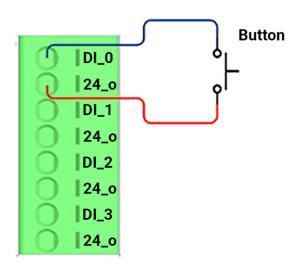


Figure 32: Digital input terminal connections

Related topics

Controller digital inputs on the Industrial I/O plugin page on page 325

General-purpose digital outputs

All 0 V ports are common, although each output has its own 0 V terminal.



All the digital outputs are short-circuit protected. An incorrect terminal connection does not lead to any permanent damage.

There are isolation potentials between a channel and other circuits, including earth, as well as between channels under normal operation.

Under normal operation, channels are not isolated from each other.

There is a monitoring point and a binary state of a visual indicator although there is no actual hardware visual indicator.

The delay time for transitions between 0 and 1 and 1 and 0 depends on the load and on software delays.

Digital outputs	Min	Typical	Max	Unit	Note
Rated current			high side mode: 500	mA	
			push-pull mode: 300	mA	
Voltage drop				V	At maximum current
Leakage current				mA	For low state
Туре					Positive logic, current sourcing

Table 21: Digital outputs

Each output can drain up to a maximum of 500 mA. If many outputs are connected and are high, the maximum current available from the internal power supply could be exceeded; an external power supply must be used.

The terminal connections belong to the GENERAL PURPOSE terminal group.

Table 22: Digital output terminal connections

Label	Purpose		
DO_n (n=[0-7])	Terminal points for digital output		
0V	0 V input to supply the digital I/Os		





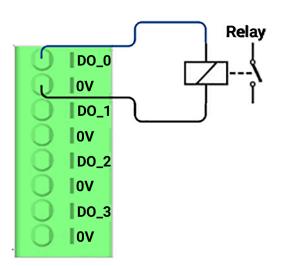


Figure 33: Digital output terminal connections

Related topics

Controller digital outputs on the Industrial I/O plugin page on page 326

Analog inputs

There are four (4) analog inputs.

Analog input types are current and voltage. The input impedance in the signal range is in the on or off state; the state is specified by the manufacturer.

Table 23: Analog inputs in current mode

Analog inputs	Min	Typical	Max	Unit	Note
Current	4		20	mA	
Voltage		24		V	
Resolution		16		Bits	

Table 24: Analog inputs in voltage mode

Analog inputs	Min	Typical	Max	Unit	Note
Voltage	0		10	V	
Current				mA	
Resolution		16		Bits	

The terminal connections belong to the GENERAL PURPOSE terminal group.



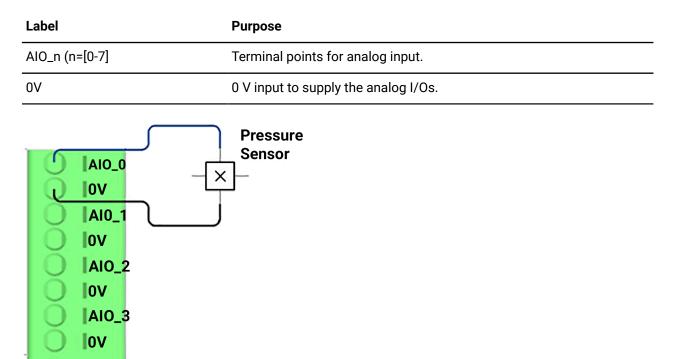


Table 25: Analog input general purpose terminal connections



Analog outputs

There are four (4) analog outputs.

Analog output types are current and voltage. The output impedance in the signal range is in the on or off state; the state is specified by the manufacturer.

The analog output has a maximum error at 25 °C \pm % of full scale, with a temperature coefficient \pm % of full scale/K. The maximum error over the full temperature range is \pm % of the full scale.

The digital resolution is measured in number of bits.

The data format returned from the application program is in binary, *Binary Coded Decimal (BCD)*, and so on. The value of the data is in the *Least Significant Bit (LSB)*.

Analog outputs	Min	Typical	Max	Unit	Note
Current	0		10	mA	
Resistance			760	ohm	
Resolution		13		Bits	

Table 26: Analog outputs in current mode



Analog outputs	Min	Typical	Max	Unit	Note
Voltage	0		10	V	
Current			29	mA	
Resolution		13		Bits	

Table 27: Analog outputs in voltage mode

The terminal connections belong to the GENERAL PURPOSE terminal group.

Table 28: Analog output general purpose terminal connections

Label	Purpose	
AIO_n (n=[0-7]	Terminal points for analog output.	
0V	0 V input to supply the analog I/Os.	
_		

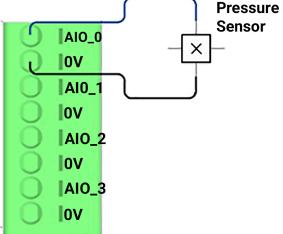


Figure 35: Analog terminal connections

Emergency stop inputs

Emergency stop devices must comply with ISO 13850:2015.

Link 6 requires an emergency stop device with two (2) Normally Closed (NC) redundant contacts.

The terminal connections belong to the SAFETY - ESTOP terminal group.

Table 29: Emergency stop terminal connections

Label	Purpose
AI	24 V wetting port

40



Label	Purpose
A2	Channel A - digital input
B1	24 V output
B2	Channel B - digital input

A typical installation involves a teach pendant that is connected on the front panel. The emergency stop is an integrated part of the teach pendant. The only thing to do is to install a jumper wire on A1, A2, B1, and B2.

A2 B1 B2
B2
TP_A1
TP_A2
TP_B1
TP_B2

Figure 36: Terminal connections with jumper wire on A1, A2, B1, and B2 when the teach pendant is connected

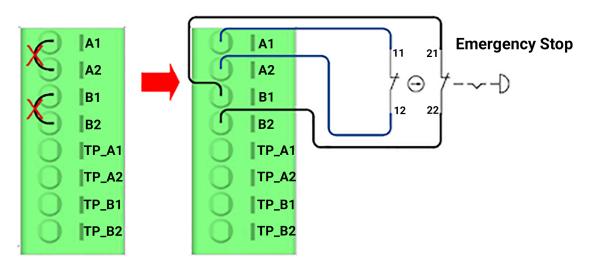


Figure 37: Terminal connections with external emergency stop connected



Teach pendant bypass inputs

There are only two ways to bypass teach pendant inputs. All other configurations prevent the robot arm from receiving power.



Important: Make sure the teach pendant is not installed when you bypass teach pendant inputs.

If a teach pendant is connected on the front panel, leave TP_A1, TP_B1, and TP_B2 open. Remove any jumper wires that are installed.

If a teach pendant is not connected on the front panel, connect TP_A1 to TP_A1 and TP_B1 to TP_B2.

The terminal connections belong to the SAFETY - ESTOP terminal group.

Table 30: Teach pendant bypass inputs terminal connections

Label	Purpose
TP_A1	24V wetting port
TP_A2	
TP_B1	24V wetting port
TP_B2	

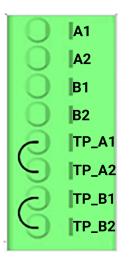


Figure 38: Teach pendant bypass inputs terminal connections

Safety-rated digital inputs

Safety-rated digital inputs can be used as redundant signals.



To use the inputs as redundant signals, connect Bank A to one of the contacts of the safety device and connect Bank B to the redundant, secondary contact of the same safety device. For example, A0 and B0 can be connected to an enabling device.

All safety-rated inputs are expected to be *NC* when both redundant contacts are in a fault state. A fault is triggered when there is a disagreement between the status of the tied redundant signals.

The terminal connections belong to the SAFETY - DIGITAL IO terminal group.

Table 31: Safety-rated digital inputs	terminal connections
---------------------------------------	----------------------

Label	Purpose
Al_n (n=[0-7])	Safety rated Bank A digital inputs
BI_n (n=[0-7])	Safety rated Bank B digital inputs
24_o	24V wetting port for safety rated Bank A and safety rated Bank B digital inputs

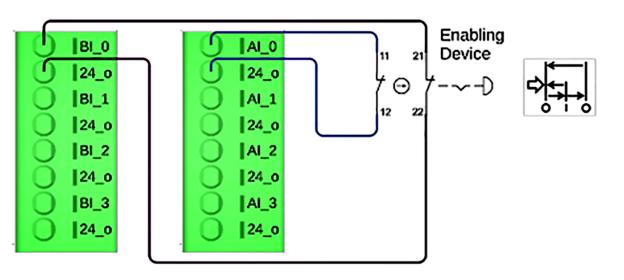


Figure 39: Safety-rated digital inputs terminal connections

Wrist I/O

Each of the two M8 connectors has eight (8) pins. The *I/O* levels associated with the connectors are designed to comply to1/ IEC 61131-2.

Connector A has two analog I/Os and four digital I/Os. Connector B has a Modbus *remote terminal unit (RTU)* with an *RS-485* interface and four (4) digital I/Os. The digital I/Os of connector A and of connector B can be configured independently.



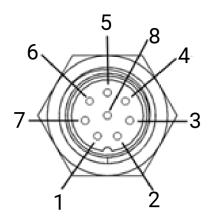


Figure 40: M8 connectors when facing the connector

Table	32:	M8	Conn	ectors
-------	-----	-----------	------	--------

	Connector A		Connector B	
Pin #	Label	Purpose	Label	Purpose
1	AOL_1	Analog In/Out	RS_485_P	RS-485 D+ (B)
2	AOL_2	Analog In/Out	RS_485_N	RS-485 D- (A
3	DIGITAL_I01	Digital In/Out	DIGITAL_I05	Digital In/Out
4	DIGITAL_I02	Digital In/Out	DIGITAL_IO6	Digital In/Out
5	+24v	Power	+24v	Power
6	DIGITAL_I03	Digital In/Out	DIGITIAL_107	Digital In/Out
7	DIGITAL_IO4	Digital In/Out	DIGITIAL_IO8	Digital In/Out
8	GND	Ground	GND	Ground

Related topics

Wrist digital on the Industrial I/O plugin page on page 330

Wrist power supply

The maximum current is shared among all power outputs of the wrist, including the A and B connectors and the pogo pad.

The wrist can handle a maximum of 5 A among all connection points. If one M8 connector is using 1 A, there is only 4 A left for the other interfaces.



Important: The maximum current that can be used by any one M8 connector is 1.4 A.



General-purpose inputs and outputs for the wrist

Unless otherwise specified, all general-purpose digital and analog inputs and outputs have the same specifications as the *Industrial I/Os*.

The currents are the same as that of the digital IOs of the wrist. The currents of the push-pull are more like those of the controller IOs, but with small differences.

Digital outputs	Min	Typical	Max	Unit
Rated current			high side mode: 500	mA
			push-pull mode, sink, low: 100	mA
			push-pull mode, sink, high: 300	mA

Table 33: Wrist IO power and current limitation

Related topics

General-purpose digital inputs on page 35 General-purpose digital outputs on page 36 Analog inputs on page 38 Analog outputs on page 39

Wrist RS-485

RS-485 on the wrist is used only for Modbus *RTU* when it is exposed through EIA/TIA-485-A, commonly referred to as RS-485.



Important: There is no RS-485 communication available from Kortex Web App.

Label	Purpose
RS_485_P	RS-485 D+ (B)
RS_485_N	RS-485 D- (A)





Label	Purpose
GND	RS-485 SC (G)

Table 35: RS-485 power inputs

RS-485	Min	Typical	Max	Unit
Input voltage at A/B terminal	-7	5	12	V
Current			2	A



Safety

Link 6 is a powerful robot that can perform heavy duty industrial tasks. Read and understand all safety considerations before installing and using the robot.

Safety includes general warnings about the robot, risk assessments, what to do in an emergency, how to work the robot when it loses power, and so on

It also includes all safety functions of Link 6.

Important: Any and all topics that discuss safety refer specifically to Link 6 and do not apply to the robot system or interactions with other systems or devices.

Related topics

Installing the arm directly to a surface on page 131 Installing the arm on a third-party adapter plate on page 133

Precautions

Always observe precautions to avoid serious injury to users, damage to other equipment, and damage to Link 6.

Read all safety information available in this guide, as well as diagnostic, maintenance, servicing, support, and troubleshooting topics, to perform a proper risk assessment and to know how to train users.

Use the robot as it is intended to be used.

Perform a risk assessment not only on Link 6, but on the entire *robot system*. Make sure in the risk assessment that the international safety standard for robotic systems, ISO 10218-1/-2, is respected, as well as all territory-specific standards for your area when applicable.

Perform a *Lockout Tagout (LOTO)* procedure so that no cable can be connected to the robot when it is under maintenance or any other situation where the power needs to be removed; it prevents the robot from being switched on accidentally.

Dispose of the robot in accordance with the laws and regulations of the territory in which the robot is installed.

Related topics

Intended use on page 2 Risk assessment on page 51 Maintenance on page 337 Servicing on page 343 Disposal on page 344



Safety directives and warnings

Follow basic safety guidelines when working with Link 6 to avoid injury to the user or damage of the equipment.

Familiarize yourself with what must be done to avoid the various dangers, warning, and cautions when working with the robot.

Directives specific to the integrator

The *integrator* is responsible for the safe use of Link 6. For the robot to be used safely, there are certain directives the integrator must follow.



Important: Link 6 does not support Power and Force Limiting (PFL) collaborative mode as described by ISO TS 15066. Keep this in mind during analysis and assessment phases.

• Perform a hazard analysis for the robot and the robot cell.



Important: Hazard analysis is a mandatory activity to have a complete risk assessment.

- Perform a risk assessment based on the system, the environment, and the user before installing Link 6.
- Include any and all external equipment, objects, and any other parts of the complete robot system added by the integrator in the risk assessment.
- Include specific precautions with respect to earthquakes when the robot is installed in an earthquake zone.
- Design the robot cell so that it is optimally ergonomic.
- Install the *arm* and the *controller* such that they are easily accessible for maintenance purposes.
- Install the arm and the controller such that they do not impede on the ergonomics of the entire robotic environment.

Danger



DANGER: A danger is an impending hazardous situation that can result in serious injury or even death, or can severely damage property. Avoid impending hazardous situations that are associated with dangers.



Keep objects and hands out of *pinch point* zones. Pinch points directly on the robot are located at the shoulder, elbow, and wrist.



1 shoulder 2 elbow 3 wrist

Disconnect the power supply and perform *Lockout Tagout* procedures when maintenance tasks must be performed.

Stop the robot when a person is trapped by the robot or some other similar emergency.

1. Push the robot out of the way, using approximately 60 N of force.



Important: Applying too much force may damage the arm.



Important: The *backdriving* range is +/- 180°.

- 2. Make sure nothing is interfering with the robot and that it is safe to proceed,
- 3. Clear the fault.
- **4.** Power the arm.

Stop the robot immediately when a part of the robot begins to vibrate. Contact support at support@kinova.ca

Stop the robot immediately when a joint on arm suddenly becomes loose. Contact support at support@kinova.ca

Stop the robot immediately when the arm suddenly loosens from the base. Secure the arm tightly to the surface.

Warnings

Warning: A warning is a potentially hazardous situation that can cause minor to moderate injury to workers, might result in serious injury or even death, and can damage the property significantly. Avoid potentially hazardous situations that are associated with warnings.



The personnel working with Link 6 should always be trained.

Note: Training requirements are determined by the integrator's *risk analysis*.

Either warm or cool the environment before storing the robot.

Do not store the robot in an environment that is below 0 °C.

Do not store the robot in an environment that is above +65 °C.

Do not power the robot in an environment that is below 0 °C; the robot may malfunction.

Do not power the robot in an environment that is above 40 °C; the robot may malfunction.

Do not use the robot in an environment that is below 0 °C; the robot may malfunction.

Do not use the robot in an environment that is above 40 °C; the robot may malfunction.

Do not touch the robot if the temperature of the environment is above 40 °C. The robot may be hot to the touch.

Do not use the robot when there are external signs of significant damage on the arm, controller, or the teach pendant.

Do not use the robot when the I/O panel is open or damaged.

Do not open the controller panel when the controller is in a wet environment.

Do not open the controller panel when the controller is in an EMI-sensitive environment.

Do not use the robot near flames or sources of heat.

Do not use the robot to take objects under water.

Do not use in heavy rain.

Lock out the device during maintenance; not locking the device could result in serious injury.

Cautions

CAUTION: A caution is a hazardous situation that may cause minor to moderate injury to workers and can damage the property. Avoid hazardous situations that are associated with cautions.

Do not touch the robot when the surface of the robot or the controller become hot.

Remove objects blocking the enclosure fans.



Note: Obstructed fans can lead to loss of functionality in internal components and can cause the controller to become hot to the touch.

If there are no objects blocking the enclosure fans and the controller becomes hot to the touch, the fans may be clogged by dust or debris. Perform basic maintenance and fan cleaning.



Related topics

Intended use on page 2 Unintended uses on page 3 Weekly maintenance on page 339 Installing the arm directly to a surface on page 131 Installing the arm on a third-party adapter plate on page 133

Risk assessment

Before installing Link 6, determine all potential risks in using the robot according to applicable standards ISO 10218, ISO 12100 for robot and machine safety.

There are several different steps in determining all potential risks.

Hazard identification	Identify all hazard and risk factors that can potentially cause harm
Risk analysis	Analyze and evaluate the risk associated with each hazard.
Risk control	Eliminate, or reduce the risk to an acceptable level, each potential hazard.

Take into account the entire *robot system* and its environment when performing a risk assessment, not just Link 6. It is impossible to cite every potential hazard because of the myriad applications into which Link 6 can be integrated. The potential hazards listed is not exhaustive.

Examples of what to take into account when performing a risk assessment

- · Other robots used in the robot system
- · Anticipated tasks of the robot system
- Anticipated workpieces
- Anticipated tools
- Anticipated uses
- Anticipated tasks
- Anticipated environments
- Types of applications, whether collaborative or non-collaborative



Note: For more details, please refer to ISO 10218 and ISO TS 15066.

- Robot parameters including, but not limited to, speeds and trajectories
- Safety function parameters including, but not limited to, restricted areas and speed limited by areas



- Protective measures including, but not limited to, interlocks, presence detection, fencing, and guards
- User training

Perform all risk assessments in compliance with the applicable standards of the territory where the robot is installed.



Important: Make sure to make the risk assessment accessible to all robot users.

Safety equipment

Applicable standards and the results of the *risk analysis* determine the requirements for safety equipment.

The equipment includes items that protect users against injury and death. Some equipment is mandatory.

Examples of mandatory equipment

One or more emergency stops

The exact number of required emergency stop buttons is determined by the layout of the system and the application of the robot.

• One enabling device

Some equipment may be useful, depending on the environment, standards, and risk analysis.

Examples of optional, yet useful, equipment

- Fencing
- Dividers
- One or more light curtains to detect when something is entering the working area of the robot
- · One or more scanners to detect when something is entering the working area of the robot

Assessments before using the robot

Every time before using Link 6, perform system checks to prevent potential damage to the robot, the robot system, and the user that could lead to a dangerous situation.

Make sure the risk assessment is available to all users.

Make sure all users receive training regarding safety concerns.

Verify that all tasks that are intended to be performed with the robot , including installation, programming, maintenance, and decommissioning, are listed in the risk assessment and that the risk assessment has been performed.



Related topics

Preventive maintenance on page 338

Stop categories

The different categories of stopping the motion of the robot safely when an emergency arises is designed to reduce existing hazards. The stop categories are aligned with IEC 60204-1.

Description						
Removes electrical power from the robot immediately.						
Initiated by pressing the <i>E-stop</i> button and by faults detected by the <i>Safety control unit</i> (SCU).						
Initiated by faults detected by the SCU.						
Stops the movement of the robot and, when the robot has stopped moving, removes electrical power from the robot.						
Brings the robot to a Monitored Stop.						
Power remains available to the robot.						

Table 36: Stop categories

Related topics

List of safety functions on page 54 State: Monitored stop on page 112 Operating modes on page 115

Emergency stop

An emergency is an unexpected situation that can lead to injury, or can damage the robot system or the objects it manipulates. An *E-stop* helps to stop the robot quickly in case of emergency.

When an emergency arises during the operation of Link 6 or any other part of the robot system, press the *E-stop* button. Pressing the button triggers a stop category 1, which stops the movement of the robot before removing power from the arm.

Whenever the *E-stop* is pressed, the light behind the ACK button on the controller and the light around the wrist wring switches off. Re-arm the *E-stop* button and reset the robot in *Kortex Web App*. After recovering from the stop, inspect the area for any obstructions that can interfere with the operation of the robot. Also, inspect the robot to ensure it has not been damaged.



If there is no damage and the emergency situation has been handled, restart the robot using Kortex Web App.



Note: The *E*-stop is found on the teach pendant. An *E*-stop may also be connected to the controller. When Link 6 is being used in Hand Guiding mode, make sure the *E*-stop is within reach.

Related topics State: Fault on page 113

Move robot arm without power

It is possible to move the *arm* when it has no power to prevent injuring a person who is trapped by the robot, for instance. The action is known as *backdriving*.

Move the arm to a safe position even without a powered drive system by backdriving the brakes manually in each joint. Moving the arm without power requires a substantial amount of force.



Warning: Backdriving the actuators more than 360 ° may damage the robot and internal cables. Depending on the position of the robot, damage may occur when the movement is less than 360 °.



Warning: Backdriving the actuators may require the arm to be reprogrammed.



CAUTION: Backdriving the actuators manually may damage the brakes.

Related topics

Safety directives and warnings on page 48

Safety functions

Link 6 has built-in tools designed to help the *integrator* to reduce risk when performing the risk analysis.

The tools are also known as safety functions. They rely on the hardware, firmware, the *SCU*, electronics, sensors, and other elements of the robot.

List of safety functions

Safety functions are built into Link 6 to minimize hazards in the robot system.

Table 37: List of safety functions

Number	Name	Triggers stop category	Level of performance	
SF01	Emergency stop	SC1	PLd	



Number	Name	Triggers stop category	Level of performance
SF02	Protective stop	SC2	PLd
SF03	Joint position	SC2	PLd
SF04	Joint speed	SC2	PLd
SF05	Monitored stop	SC0	PLd
SF06	Protection zone	SC2	PLd
SF07	Tool Center Point (TCP) & Elbow speed	SC2	PLd

Related topics

Stop categories on page 53 Safety modes on page 61 Robot safety protections and limits on page 72 Protection zones on page 77 Status of safety functions on page 298

SF01 Emergency stop

What does SF01 monitor?

SF01 monitors external emergency signals from the Safety I/Os to the robot. It initiates a *stop category* 1, which stops the movement of the robot before removing power from the arm.

Cause of the trigger

- The *E*-stop button is pressed on the teach pendant.
- A signal is detected on the input reserved for emergency stops.

Remedy

- 1. Make sure that it is safe to resume operation of the robot.
- 2. Tap CLEAR FAULT in the Robot control panel to remove the signal.
- **3.** Reset the E-stop button by turning the button.
- 4. Switch the arm on.

Related topics State: Fault on page 113 List of safety functions on page 54 Status of safety functions on page 298



SF02 Protective stop

What does SF02 monitor?

SF02 monitors *protective stop* signals sent to the robot. Protective stops interrupt the robot motion, but it does not remove power from the robot. It is a *stop category* 2.

Cause of the trigger #1

Internal processes of the *main processing unit* (*MPU*) are avoiding a category 0 stop before safety thresholds are exceeded.

Remedy for trigger #1

Tap **Diagnostics** > **Notifications** or tap **I** > **VIEW ALL** to identify the cause of the protective stop.

Cause of the trigger #2

External devices assigned as protective stops on the Safety I/Os page.

Remedy for trigger #2

Ensure the signal of the specific I/O channel is off by sending a Protective Stop Reset signal. For example, switch off the light curtain signal, close a door linked with this specific signal, and so on.

Related topics Safety I/O on page 87 List of safety functions on page 54 Status of safety functions on page 298

SF03 Joint position monitoring

What does SF03 monitor?

SF03 monitors the positions of each joint and compares the positions with the limits set in the **Joint Limits Position Limits** page.

Cause of the trigger

Certain trajectories may inadvertently make a single joint rotate constantly in the same direction without unwrapping. It is most common with the last joint. The unidirectional rotation may also happen when operating in Automatic and Recovery modes. It results in a *stop category* 2 protective stop.



Remedy

- 1. Clear the associated fault.
- 2. Identify which joint is nearing its position limit.
- 3. Move that joint in the position opposite to its limit.
- 4. Launch the Jog Angular panel and check the current joint positions.
- 5. Adjust the trajectory that caused the fault so that the joint unwraps before it reaches the limit.

Related topics

Joint limits on page 73 Operating modes on page 115 Mode: Manual Jog on page 115 List of safety functions on page 54 Status of safety functions on page 298

SF04 Joint speed monitoring

What does SF04 monitor?

SF04 monitors the speed of each joint and compares the speeds with the limits set in the **Joint** Limits Speed Limits page.

Cause of the trigger

- Unforeseen environmental forces could cause parts of the robot to exceed the speed planned for its trajectory. The unforeseen forces, such as a collision with a wall, may cause the *actuators* to *backdrive*.
- It can also be caused when the robot is in Monitored Stop when an external force is applied to it.

It results in a *stop category* 2 protective stop.

Remedy

Resume the trajectory. Link 6 has built-in functions to saturate its speed limits automatically.

If the error is triggered consistently, consider modifying the trajectory.

Related topics

Joint limits on page 73 Elbow limits on page 76 Operating modes on page 115 Mode: Manual Jog on page 115 List of safety functions on page 54



Status of safety functions on page 298

SF05 Monitored stop

What does SF05 monitor?

SF05, or *Monitored stop*, monitors the velocity of each joint and makes sure the velocity is zero when the robot is not moving. It makes sure the arm remains in a standstill position.

Cause of the trigger

Motion in the *actuators* is detected and results in a stop category 0. For example, the robot stops moving when it is vibrating a lot.

Remedy

- 1. Remove the external source of motion.
- 2. Add damping elements to each source of vibration that is in contact with the robot.

Related topics

List of safety functions on page 54 Status of safety functions on page 298

SF06 Protection zone monitoring

What does SF06 monitor?

SF06 monitors the robot to make sure no part of the robot, including the user-defined tool sphere, comes in contact with any of the user-defined *protection zones* that are enabled.

Cause of the trigger

The robot touches an enabled protection zone when operating in Manual or running a program. It results in a *stop category* 2.

Remedy

- 1. Power the robot.
- 2. Clear the fault.
- **3.** Use Recovery mode to leave the protection zone.
- Reconfigure protection zones if necessary and safe from Safety > Protection Zones in Kortex Web App.
- Disable protection zones if necessary and safe from Safety > Protection Zones in Kortex Web App.



Related topics

Operating modes on page 115 Protection zones on page 77 List of safety functions on page 54 Status of safety functions on page 298

SF07 TCP and elbow speed monitoring

What does SF07 monitor?

SF07 monitors the *Cartesian* speeds of the *TCP* and the *elbow*, which is the third joint, so that the speeds do not exceed the values set in the **TCP & Elbow Limits** page.

Cause of the trigger

- A large force is exerted on the robot during Hand Guiding mode, causing the speed of the *TCP* or elbow to increase.
- Joint commands, especially on the first joint, reach large angular speeds.

It results in a stop category 2.

Remedy

- Apply constraints on local motion to limit the joint speeds and to keep the joint speeds within safe values.
- Modify the trajectory to include more waypoints such that the end effector and the elbow cannot reach high velocities.

Related topics

Mode: Hand Guiding on page 118 Tool center point limits on page 74 Elbow limits on page 76 List of safety functions on page 54 Status of safety functions on page 298

Stopping times and distances

The stopping time, measured in milliseconds, and distance, measured in degrees, are detailed for the first three joints of the *arm*. It follows ISO 10218-1:2011.



of maximum	e Extension (%)	Speed (%)	First joint (Base)		Second joint (Shoulder)		Third joint (Elbow)	
payload (%)			Stop time (ms)	Stop distance (°)	Stop time (ms)	Stop distance (°)	Stop time (ms)	Stop distance (°)
33%	33%	33%	290.13	7.76	238.42	6.87	532.08	8.50
		66%	331.05	19.02	611.09	20.11	756.18	30.78
		100%	409.52	38.57	591.21	40.43	705.37	41.67
	66%	33%	205.13	6.20	582.20	7.79	786.88	8.43
		66%	320.01	18.35	568.73	19.44	718.73	21.26
		100%	324.87	32.39	553.50	39.02	681.18	35.97
	100%	33%	343.08	4.80	333.61	6.26	704.49	8.95
		66%	182.39	9.12	440.58	12.00	601.87	22.07
		100%	262.86	17.04	677.68	22.66	717.89	41.58
66%	33%	33%	197.77	7.39	506.05	16.22	499.89	8.45
		66%	286.76	20.12	648.17	19.14	709.07	28.28
		100%	476.89	39.13	726.71	41.24	632.92	41.79
	66%	33%	267.15	6.06	430.09	10.97	588.40	8.41
		66%	254.99	16.61	501.77	23.12	604.31	21.10
		100%	331.13	32.28	525.56	36.19	608.16	33.33
	100%	33%	136.35	3.96	482.65	6.25	794.85	8.10
		66%	178.68	8.85	467.53	13.46	694.57	21.52
		100%	272.87	17.40	651.80	24.57	761.62	41.16
100%	33%	33%	198.08	7.54	997.89	7.06	649.97	8.54
		66%	286.74	19.16	614.52	20.16	671.20	28.75
		100%	478.41	40.18	541.15	40.65	589.54	41.46
	66%	33%	162.72	6.27	506.89	11.63	668.56	8.68
		66%	275.33	16.77	484.38	21.69	726.22	22.62

Table 38: Stopping time and distance in accordance with ISO 10218-1:2011



of maximum	ge Extension (%)	Speed (%)	First joint Second (Base) joint (Shoulder)		Third joint (Elbow)			
payload (%)			Stop time (ms)	Stop distance (°)	Stop time (ms)	Stop distance (°)	Stop time (ms)	Stop distance (°)
		100%	323.83	32.35	699.15	37.72	649.07	31.39
	100%	33%	174.20	5.94	390.97	6.59	698.42	9.25
		66%	180.34	9.05	463.63	14.23	742.03	23.35
		100%	344.00	37.41	509.47	23.16	892.70	42.64

Diagnostic coverage

Link 6 continually monitors itself and all diagnostics are displayed in *Kortex Web App*.

All safety functions are monitored. The state of each part that makes the *arm* work are also monitored. Problems encountered, with respect to safety functions of the arm, are displayed on the **Status** pages. The problems must be resolved before the robot can move again.

General and detailed information about the *base*, *actuators*, *end effector*, and *flange* positions are displayed on the **Monitoring** pages.

Related topics Diagnostics on page 297 Status of safety functions on page 298

Safety modes

Configure speeds both as normal or reduced to define safe operation of the robot.

Normal *safety mode* determines the maximum speeds at which the robot can move in *Cartesian* and *angular* directions.

Reduced safety mode also determines the maximum speeds at which the robot can move in Cartesian and Angular directions. However, the maximum speeds in reduced mode are lower than those of the normal safety mode.

Reduced mode can be triggered by safety inputs. For instance, when the robot is learning its trajectories through Hand Guiding, the speed is dictated by the reduced mode to prevent injury.



Remember: It is the responsibility of the *integrator* to set all normal and reduced speeds with respect to the risk assessment. Also, all reduced speeds must be configured to be less than the corresponding normal speed.



Reduced mode can be selected from *Kortex Web App*.

Related topics

Mode: Manual Jog on page 115 Mode: Hand Guiding on page 118 Mode: Hold-to-Run on page 119 List of safety functions on page 54 Robot safety protections and limits on page 72

State timelines of safety functions

Each safety function enters one of two states during operations.

A change in the state of the arm during different modes of operation dictate the state of each of the safety functions.

Table 39: Existing states and modes of operation

Safety function states	activeinactive
Arm states	Initialization
	• Idle
	Maintenance
	Brake Release
	Operational
	Fault power off
	Recovery
	Fault power on
Operating modes	 Manual Jog
	Hand Guiding
	Hold-to-Run
	Automatic
	Monitored Stop
	Recovery

Related topics

State timelines of safety outputs on page 94



SF01 Emergency stop timeline

The triggers for and the recovery from the Emergency stop function changes the state of the function.

Equally important in knowing the timeline of a safety function is knowing where to find the current safety function status. For the status of SF01 Emergency stop function, there are a few places in Kortex Web App.

- Diagnostics > Status > Safety Functions
- Diagnostics > Status > SCU > Emergency stop button signals disagreement
- Diagnostics > Status > SCU > Teach pendant emergency stop button signals disagreement

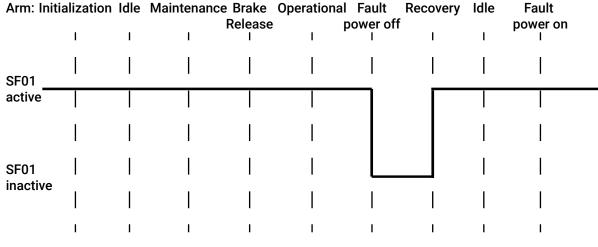
Table 40: SF01 trigger and action timeline

Monitor frequency of trigger	0.01 s				
Trigger	 One of two channels of the Emergency stop safety input sends the signal to the controller . The <i>E-stop</i> button on the teach pendant is pressed. 				
Trigger results	Stop category 1 is deployed.The arm is in Fault power off.				
Reset	 Release E-stop attached to the controller. Release E-stop button on the teach pendant. Clear the fault from Kortex Web App . 				
Reset result	State of robot is Idle.No power is feeding the arm.				
Failsafe	Not applicable				



Operating modes:

Manual Jog Hand Guiding Hold-to-Run Automatic Monitored Stop Manual Jog Hand Guiding Monitored Stop



Ż

Note: SF01 is inactive when the arm is in the state Fault power off only when it is initiated by stop category 0 or stop category 1 only.

Figure 41: Timeline for SF01 before and after being triggered

SF02 Protective stop timeline

The triggers for and the recovery from the Protective stop function changes the state of the function.

Equally important in knowing the timeline of a safety function is knowing where to find the current safety function status. For the status of SF02 Protective stop function, there is one place to look in Kortex Web App: **Diagnostics** > **Status** > **Safety Functions**.

Table 41: SF02 trigger and action timeline

Monitor frequency of trigger	0.01 s
Trigger	One of two channels of the Protective stop safety input sends the signal to the controller .
Trigger results	• Stop category 2 is deployed.
	Remember: The operating mode is Monitored Stop.
	The operating mode cannot be changed.
	The arm is Operational.





Reset co	ndition	s - Autom	atic	The function resets automatically when all the channels of the safety input that are configured for Protective Stop with Automatic Reset signals the controller.								
Reset co	ndition	s - Manua	I	 All conditions must be met. All the channels of the safety input that are configured for Protective Stop with Manual Reset. All the channels of the safety input that are configured for Protective Stop Reset signals the controller. 								
Reset res	sult			The progra	m resume	s operati	on.					
Failsafe				SF02 can e is deployed	-	processi	ng errors. In	this ca	ise, stop category 0			
Operating m	odes:				lold-to-Run Automatic H M		ng					
Arm: Init	ializatio	on Idle M	aintenan I	ce Brake O Release I	perational I	I	Recovery I	ldle I	Fault power on I			
SF02	I	I	Ι		Ι	I	I	I	I			
active		I					I	I	I			
	I	Ι					I	Ι	I			
SF02												
inactive	I	I	I		Ι	Ι	I	I	I			
	I	I	I	I	I	I.	I	I	I			

Figure 42: Timeline for SF02 before and after being triggered

SF03 Joint position monitoring timeline

Each safety function enters one of two states during operations; it depends on the current state of the arm and the current mode of operation.

Equally important in knowing the timeline of a safety function is knowing where to find the current safety function status. For the status of SF03 Joint position monitoring function, there are a few places in Kortex Web App.

Diagnostics > Status > Safety Functions

KINOVA



Diagnostics > Safety > Joint Limits > Position Limits

Table 42: SF03 trigger and action timeline

Monitor frequency of trigger	0.01 s
Trigger	One of the joint positions is outside the configured limit.
Trigger results	Stop category 2 is deployed.The arm is in the state Fault power on.
Reset conditions	 All conditions must be met. Each joint position is within operational limits. The arm is Operational and is in the operating mode Monitored Stop.
Reset	Tap CLEAR FAULT .
Reset result	 Normal conditions lead to two results. The operating mode is Monitored Stop. The arm does not move. Abnormal conditions lead to two results. The arm is in Recovery. The position of at least one joint is between the recovery and the operational limit.
Failsafe	SF03 can experience processing errors. In this case, stop category 0 is deployed.



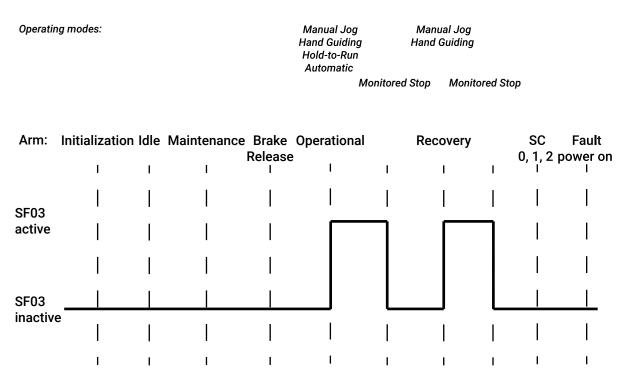


Figure 43: Timeline for SF03 before and after being triggered

SF04 Joint speed monitoring timeline

Each safety function enters one of two states during operations; it depends on the current state of the arm and the current mode of operation.

Equally important in knowing the timeline of a safety function is knowing where to find the current safety function status. For the status of SF04 Joint speed monitoring function, there are a few places in Kortex Web App.

- Diagnostics > Status > Safety Functions
- Diagnostics > Safety > Joint Limits > Speed Limits

Table 43: SF04 trigger and action timeline

Monitor frequency of trigger	0.01 s
Trigger	The speed of at least one joint is faster than the configured limit.
Trigger results	 Stop category 2 is deployed. The operating mode is Monitored Stop. The arm is in the state Fault power on.
Reset conditions	The speed of the joints are corrected to be within operational limits.
Reset	Tap CLEAR FAULT .



Reset re	esult			Normal conditions lead to two results.					
The operating mode is Monitored Stop.The arm does not move.									
Failsafe				SF04 can is deploy	-	proces	sing errors. I	n this case, s	top category 0
Operating r	nodes:				Manual Jog Hand Guiding Hold-to-Run Automatic	Monitorec Stop	Manual Jog Hand Guiding	Monitored Stop	
Arm: Init	tialization I	ldle M	laintenan	ce Brake Release	Operational	I	Recovery	SC 0, 1, 2	Fault
		I	I	I	I	I	I		2 power on I
650 4	Ι	' I			 	 	і 		power on I
	 	' 	י 	 				, ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	2 power on I
	 	 	 	 					2 power on I
SF04 active SF04	 		 						2 power on
active			 						2 power on

Figure 44: Timeline for SF04 before and after being triggered

Related topics

State timeline for the safety output Normal Speed Mode on page 96

SF05 Monitored stop timeline

Each safety function enters one of two states during operations; it depends on the current state of the arm and the current mode of operation.

Equally important in knowing the timeline of a safety function is knowing where to find the current safety function status. For the status of SF05 Monitored stop0 function, there is one place to look in Kortex Web App: **Diagnostics** > **Status** > **Safety Functions** .

Table 44: SF05 trigger and action timeline

Monitor frequency of trigger 0.01 s



Trigger				 The arm is in the process of stopping and has taken more than 1000 ms to stop. The difference between the actual position of at least one joint and its position when the robot entered the stop state is more than 0.5°. 						
Trigger res	ults			-		0 is deple he state l	oyed. Fault powe	er off.		
Reset				Tap CLEAI	R FAULT.					
Reset resu	lt			The opera	ting mod	e is Monit	ored Stop.			
Failsafe				When SF0 category 0			joint positio	ons for mo	ore tha	ın 60 ms, stop
Operating mod	les:				ŀ	Manual Jog land Guiding Hold-to-Run Automatic		nual Jog d Guiding		
Arm: Initial	ization	ldle M	aintenan	ce Brake (Release)peration	al	Recovery	SC 0, 1	SC 2	Fault power on
SF05 active SF05 inactive	' 									

Figure 45: Timeline for SF05 before and after being triggered

SF06 Protection zone monitoring timeline

Each safety function enters one of two states during operations; it depends on the current state of the arm and the current mode of operation.

Equally important in knowing the timeline of a safety function is knowing where to find the current safety function status. For the status of SF05 Monitored stop0 function, there is one place to look in Kortex Web App: **Diagnostics** > **Status** > **Safety Functions** .



Monitor frequency of trigger	0.01 s				
Trigger	 Any part of the flange enters at least one protection zone. Any part of the tool enters at least one protection zone. Any checkpoint enters at least one protection zone. 				
Trigger results	Stop category 2 is deployed.The arm is in the state Fault power on.				
Reset conditions	 All conditions must be met. Tool sphere is outside all configured protection zones. All checkpoints are outside all configured protection zones. 				
Reset	Tap CLEAR FAULT .				
Reset result	The operating mode is Monitored Stop.The arm does not move.				
Failsafe	SF06 can experience processing errors. In this case, stop category 0 is deployed.				
Operating modes:	Manual Jog Manual Jog Hand Guiding Hand Guiding Hold-to-Run Monitored Stop Automatic Monitored Stop				
Arm: Initialization Idle Mainte	enance Brake Operational Recovery SC Fault Release 0,1,2 power on				
SF06 active SF06 partially					

Table 45: SF06 trigger and action timeline

Figure 46: Timeline for SF06 before and after being triggered

Т

I

L

T

T



active

SF06 inactive

L

Т

Т

Related topics

State timeline for the safety output Normal Speed Mode on page 96

SF07 TCP and Elbow speed monitoring timeline

Each safety function enters one of two states during operations; it depends on the current state of the arm and the current mode of operation.

Equally important in knowing the timeline of a safety function is knowing where to find the current safety function status. For the status of SF07 TCP and Elbow speed monitoring function, there are a few places in Kortex Web App.

- Diagnostics > Status > Safety Functions
- Safety > TCP & Elbow Limits > TCP Limits
- Safety > TCP & Elbow Limits > Elbow Limits

Table 46: SF07 trigger and action timeline

Monitor frequency of trigger	0.01
------------------------------	------

Monitor frequency of trigger	0.01 s					
Trigger	At least one trigger is needed.					
	TCP translation speed is higher than the configured limit.					
	 TCP rotation speed is higher than the configured limit. 					
	• Elbow translation speed is higher than the configured limit.					
Trigger results	Stop category 2 is deployed.					
	The operating mode becomes Monitored Stop.					
	The arm is in the state Fault power on.					
Reset conditions	The TCP translation speed is corrected to be lower than the					
	configured limit.					
	 The TCP rotation speed is corrected to be lower than the 					
	configured limit.					
	The Elbow translation speed is corrected to be lower than					
	the configured limit.					
Reset	Tap CLEAR FAULT .					
Reset result	The operating mode is Monitored Stop.					
	The arm does not move.					
Failsafe	SF07 can experience processing errors. In this case, stop category 0					
	is deployed.					



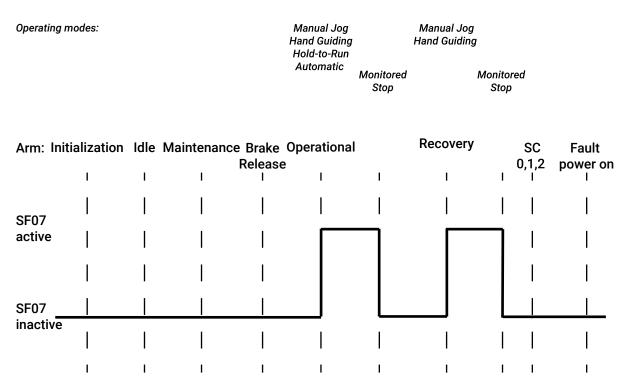


Figure 47: Timeline for SF07 before and after being triggered

Related topics

State timeline for the safety output Normal Speed Mode on page 96

Robot safety protections and limits

To make sure the robot operates safely in its working environment, configure joint limits, *TCP* and *elbow* limits, *protection zones*, and safety I/Os.

All tasks related to configuring the robot with respect to safety are performed by the integrator.



Important: Safety parameters can be modified only when there is no power in the arm.



Figure 48: Accessing the safety pages

The *controller* prevents movement, speed, and force outside of the configured limits. The configured limits are monitored by certain safety functions.

Emergency stop



- Protective stop
- Joint position
- Joint speed
- Protection zone
- TCP and elbow speed

Related topics List of safety functions on page 54 Safety modes on page 61

Joint limits

Each joint can be configured with specific minimum and maximum angular positions.

Additionally, the speed of each joint can be configured in both normal and reduced safety modes.

= KINOVA			# O	℃ (U) Idle Off
Joint Limits Position Limits	Speed Limits			•
Joint 1 -197.1	• Min-360*	360 Max 360 * Joint 4 -360	280 500 ► Min-360' Max 300' 360	•
Joint 2 -360	 350 • Min-360* 	360 • Joint 5 -360 Max 360* ↓	350 360 • Min -360' Max 360'	•
Joint 3 -360	860 Min -360*	400 ● 360 * Joint 6 -360 Mex 360*	360 ●	•
		பு POWERON		~

Figure 49: Position Limits page of Joint Limits page

When configuring the speed limits of the joints, select either **Normal** or **Reduced** from the **Safety Mode** menu. The limits apply to the safety mode that is selected.



= KINOVA		k			tidle off €
or Joint Limits					
Position Limits	Speed Limits				Safety Mode Normal
Joint 1 Min 01/s	100	Max 180°/s	Joint 4 Min 0*/s	200 • Max 36	
Joint 2 Min 0*/s	100	Max 180°/s	Joint 5 Min 0*/s	200 Max 36	200 °/s
Joint 3 Min 0'/s	100	Max 180'/s	Joint 6 Min 0*/s	200 Max 36	200 °/s
					¥
		() Powe	RON		

Figure 50: Speed Limits page of Joint Limits page

Table 47: Ranges of speed limits for joints

Safety mode	Joint size	Speed range
Normal	Size 110	0 °/s to 180 °/s
	Size 80	0 °/s to 360 °/s
Reduced	Size 110	0 °/s to 100 °/s
	Size 80	0 °/s to 200 °/s

Tool center point limits

The position and rotation of the *TCP* being used must be configured.

The *TCP* has translation and rotational speed, force, and *angular* positions. The configured *TCP* speeds in the reduced safety mode must be less than the configured *TCP* speeds in the corresponding normal safety mode.



Important: There must be no power in the arm when the robot safeties are being configured.



≡		3							safety checksum 00 00 00 00	Ļ	ଞ	≪ Idle	Off
٢	TCP & Elbow Li	mits											
	TCP Limits	Elbow Limits	Translation Speed Rotation Speed	Min 0mm/s Min 0°/s	•	Max 2000mm/s Max 600°/s	1700	mm/s °/s			Norr Norr		
					U POWER	ON							

Figure 51: TCP limits

Table 48: TCP configuration limits

TCP limit	Safety mode	Description			
Note: The range represents the limits, or thresholds, that trigger faults. They are not in any way desired velocities.					
Translation Speed	Normal	Use the slider or enter the value in the text box.			
		Range: 0 mm/s to 2000 mm/s			
		Default: 1700 mm/s			
	Reduced	Use the slider or enter the value in the text box.			
		Range: 0 mm/s to 250 mm/s			
		Default: 250 mm/s			
Rotation Speed	Normal	Use the slider or enter the value in the text box.			
		Range:: 0 °/s to 600 °/s			
		Default: 300 °/s			



TCP limit	Safety mode	Description
	Reduced	Use the slider or enter the value in the text box.
		Range: 0 °/s to 150 °/s
		Default: 150 °/s

Elbow limits

I

The speed and orientation of the *elbow* must be configured.

The position and orientation of an *end effector* being used must be configured.

Important: There must be no power in the arm when the robot safeties are being configured.

≡		3						ету снескѕим 00 00 00	Ļ	ଞ	℃ Idle	Off
٢	TCP & Elbow L	imits										
	TCP Limits	Elbow Limits	Speed	Min 0mm/s	Max 250mm/s	250	mm/s			Safety Redu Norr Redu	nal	· ^
												*
					ON							

Figure 52: Elbow limits

Table 49: Elbow configuration limits

Elbow limit	Safety mode	Description
Speed	Normal	Use the slider or enter the value in the text box.
		Range: 0 mm/s to 2000 mm/s
		Default: 1700 mm/s





Elbow limit	Safety mode	Description
	Reduced	Use the slider or enter the value in the text box.
		Range: 0 mm/s to 250 mm/s
		Default: 250 mm/s

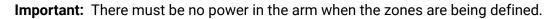
Protection zones

Prevent or limit where the robot can move by creating protection zones.

The zones are three-dimensional geometric volumes intended to limit the possibility of the robot running into users or objects near it. Protection zones define such things as *end effectors*, walls, tables, and objects. Up to eight zones, excluding the tool zone, can be active simultaneously.



Important: The zone defined for the tool is the only zone that cannot be disabled. However, like the other zones, it can be modified. The tool zone must exist so that the robot takes the size of the end effector into account.



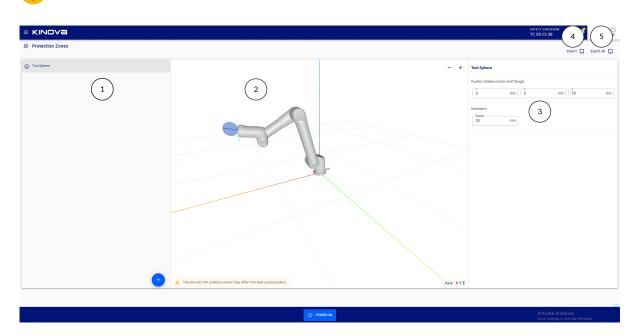


Figure 53: The Protection Zones page

- 1 Zones pane
- 2 Visualization pane
- 3 Zones configuration pane



4 Import



Important: Import is available on the teach pendant only when a *USB* is connected in the USB port on the controller. It is available from a web browser when there is no USB stick.

5 Export All



Important: Export is available on the teach pendant only when a *USB* is connected in the USB port on the controller. It is available from a web browser when there is no USB stick.

When you first access the **Protection Zones** page, only the **Zones** and **Visualization** panes are visible. Tap on any of the zones in the Zones pane to view its corresponding configuration pane.

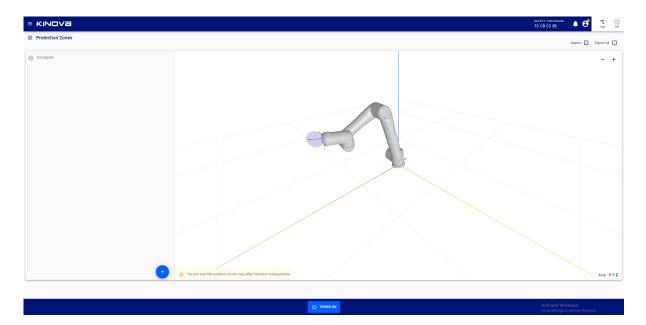


Figure 54: Initial launch of Protection Zones page

Related topics

Effective workspace on page 10 List of safety functions on page 54

Tool sphere

The tool sphere, displayed in the **Protection Zones** page, is a *protection zone* for the *end effector* on the *arm*. The tool sphere is the only protection zone that can move.

The end effector and the arm must never collide with each other. Therefore, the tool sphere is always displayed in the **Protection Zones** page. It can never be deleted and it can never be deactivated. However, the zone of the tool pythosphere can be modified.



Important: Always define the tool sphere with respect to the flange.

Important: Always make sure the tool sphere size and offset reflect reality.

Zones pane

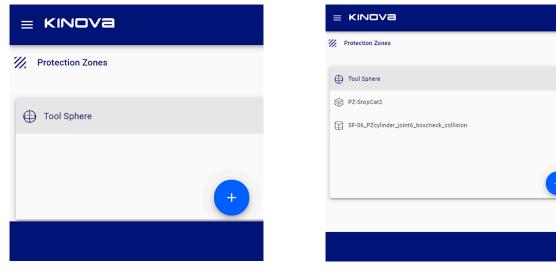
Create, rename, duplicate, and delete zones from the Zones pane. Export individual protection zones as XML or JSON from a web browser.

The zone for the end effector is always present; in the pane, it is listed as the Tool Sphere.



Important: The zone defined for the tool is the only zone that cannot be deleted. It must exist so that the robot takes the shape and offset of the end effector into account.

Protection zones that are already defined are listed in the Protection Zones pane.



the tool, are listed in the Zones pane

Figure 55: Example when no zones, except for Figure 56: Example of multiple zones listed in the Zones pane



Selected zone actions	Description				
Duplicate	Create a new zone that is a duplicate of the selected protection zone.				
	<i>Tip:</i> When the maximum number of zones are created, a message is displayed on the page indicating that no more zones can be added. Also, the option to duplicate from the menu is not selectable.				
Delete	Delete the selected zone.				
	A confirmation dialog launches. Tap Delete to delete the zone.				
	Delete the protection zone				
	Are you sure you want to delete this protection zone? Copy of New Zone 3/16/2022				
	S CANCEL V DELETE				
Export XML	Export the currently saved configuration of the selected zone as an XML file.				
	Important: Export is available on the teach pendant only when a USB is connected in the USB port on the controller. It is available from a web browser when there is no USB stick.				
Export JSON	Export the currently save configuration of the selected zone as a JSON file.				
	Important: Export is available on the teach pendant only when a USB is connected in the USB port on the controller. It is available from a web browser when there is no USB stick.				

Table 50: Actions that can be performed on each protection zone from the kebab (:) menu

Adding a safety zone

Safety zones are areas where the robot cannot enter.



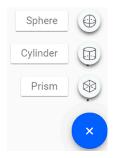
About this task

Create one safety zone for each object or area that the robot must avoid. Up to eight zones can be active and monitored by the robot at one time. However, more than eight zones can be created; zones can be left inactive.

Procedure

- **1.** Tap the hamburger menu (**=**) to expand the menu.
- 2. Tap Safety > Protection Zones.
- 3. Tap in the Zones pane of the Protection Zones page.

A menu of zone shapes launches.



4. Tap one of the three shapes.

The new zone with its shape is highlighted in the Visualization pane.

The default values of the zone is launched in the Configuration pane.

- 5. Enter the desired values in the Configuration pane.
- 6. Tap Activate Zone to make the zone active.

Manipulating existing safety zones

Deleting, duplicating, and renaming zones are all ways of manipulating existing zones.

About this task

The entire operation is performed within the Zones pane.

Procedure

- **1.** Tap the hamburger menu (**=**) to expand the menu.
- 2. Tap Safety > Protection Zones.
- **3.** Tap the zone in the list that needs to be manipulated.

A single tap selects the zone.

4. Tap the associated *kebab* (i) menu.A menu for the selected zone launches.



- 5. Tap the action needed for that zone.
 - Tap **Delete** to delete a zone.
 - Tap **Duplicate** to duplicate a zone. Modify the zone properties after duplicating it.
 - Tap Export JSON to export the zone to a JSON file.
 - **Important:** Export is available on the teach pendant only when a *USB* is connected in the USB port on the controller. It is available from a web browser when there is no USB stick.
 - Tap Export XML to export the zone to an XML file.

!

Important: Export is available on the teach pendant only when a *USB* is connected in the USB port on the controller. It is available from a web browser when there is no USB stick.

Zone shapes

Each zone is created using a specific shape.

There are three shapes that are available. Some properties are shared among all shape. Some properties are specific to the shape. The properties of the zones must be defined or configured. Configure the zones in the Configuration pane.

Table 51: Properties specific to the tool sphere zone

Properties	Description
Position	Distance is measured from the x,y,z coordinates of the wrist flange and is measured in millimeters.
	Default coordinates: (0,0,0)
Dimension	The dimension of the radius of the end effector measured in millimeters.
	Default radial size: 100 mm

Table 52: Properties common to all zone shapes that can be added

Properties	Description
Name	When the shape is first created, its name is automatically set to the current date appended to the string "New Zone".
	Change the name to something meaningful.
Activate Zone	By default, the zone is active.



Properties	Description
	Deactivate the zone when the environment around the robot is going to change. For example, when a single arm is used in multiple setups,
	it is convenient to be able to activate the desired zone for the current environment.

Table 53: Properties specific to the cylinder zone

Properties	Description				
Orientation - Euler	Enter the orientation of the end effector using the extrinsic ZYX Euler angle convention.				
	Orientation is measured in degrees.				
Position	Distance is measured from the x,y,z coordinates of the base and is measured in millimeters.				
	Default coordinates: (0,0,0)				
Dimension	Enter the height (z) of the cylinder and the radius of the zone.				
	Height and radius are measured in millimeters.				
	Default height: 300 mm				
	Default radial size: 200 mm				



Properties	Description	
Orientation - Euler	Enter the orientation of the end effector using the extrinsic ZYX Euler angle convention.	
Position	Distance is measured from the x,y,z coordinates of the base and is measured in millimeters.	
	Default coordinates: (0,0,0)	
Dimension	Enter the length (x), width (y), and height (z) of the zone.	
	Length, width, and height are measured in millimeters.	
	Default length: 250 mm	
	Default width: 250 mm	



Properties	Description		
	Default height: 250 mm		
Table 55: Properties specific to the sphere zone			
Properties	Description		
Dimension	Enter the dimension of the zone as a radius.		
	The radius is measured in millimeters.		
	Default radial size: 200 mm		
Position	Distance is measured from the x,y,z coordinates of the base and is measured in millimeters.		
	Default radial size: 200 mm		

Related topics

Euler angle convention used on page 84

Euler angle convention used

Euler angles are used to represent the orientation of an object, such as a robot tool. The convention used is Tait-Bryan, extrinsic ZYX.

There are three ways to rotate from the reference coordinate from (x,y,z) to the considered rigid body.

- 1. Rotation about fixed x axis of an angle rx (γ).
- **2.** Rotation about fixed y axis of an angle ry (β) .
- **3.** Rotation about fixed z axis of an angle $rz(\alpha)$.

With this angle convention, we can define the associated rotation matrix.

 $R = Z(\alpha)Y(\beta)X(\gamma)$

Exporting or importing all zones into one file

All zones can be exported into one XML or JSON file after they are defined. All zones can be imported at once.

About this task

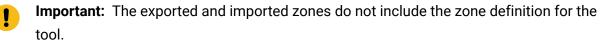
Exporting zones is a fast way to integrate the robot, especially when multiple robots are in the working environment. Define zones for one of the robots, import the file for the next robot, and modify the values for it. Again, these new zones can be exported.



1

Important: Export is available on the teach pendant only when a *USB* is connected in the USB port on the controller. It is available from a web browser when there is no USB stick.

Important: Import is available on the teach pendant only when a *USB* is connected in the USB port on the controller. It is available from a web browser when there is no USB stick.



≡ KINOVa	🧳 🗣	5 (U) 104 00
W Protection Zones	import 😱	Export All

= KINOVA	🧳 🗣	5	(U) off
% Protection Zones	Import 📊	Export All	Ģ

Figure 57: Location of Protection zone Export All button

Figure 58: Location of Protection zone Import
button

Procedure

Export all zones to one file.

 Tap Export All > Export JSON or Export All > Export XML to export all the zones to a JSON or XML file.

All zones are saved in the zone definition file.

Import all zone from one file

- 2. Tap Import.
- 3. Browse to the location where the protection zone XML or JSON files are stored.
- **4.** Select the desired file.

Results

The Zones pane populates with all the zones defined in the file.



Example:

= KINOVA	
W Protection Zones	
	Ĺ
A The maximum number of protection	zones (8, excluding
Tool Sphere	A
New Zone 10/14/2021	:
New Zone 10/14/2021	:
New Zone 10/14/2021	: ·
() New Zone 10/14/2021	:
Rew Zone 10/14/2021	:
() New Zone 10/14/2021	
	:
P Now 7000 10/14/2021	<u>+</u>

Visualization pane

A visualization of the defined protection zones, as well as the arm of Link 6 in its current position, is in the Visualization pane. The view helps to determine the protection zones in a 3-dimensional space with respect to the robot.



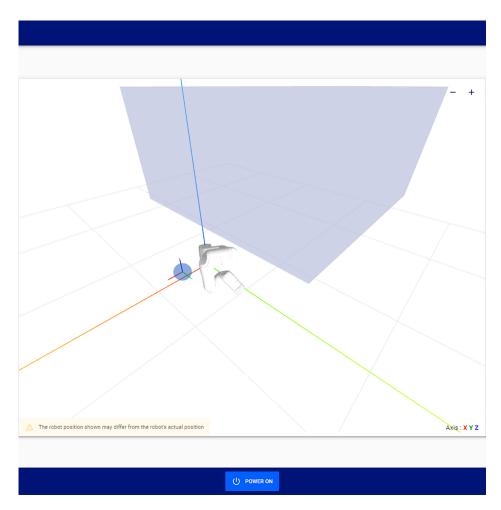


Figure 59: Visualization pane with tool sphere, robot, and other protection zones

Zoom in, zoom out, and view the zones from different angles.

Safety I/O

Each output safety function can be assigned to one or more of the eight channels.

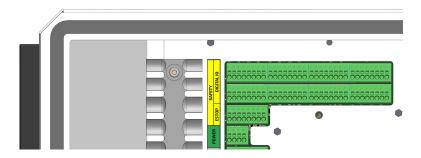


Figure 60: Location of connectors for the Safety I/O equipment



When the physical equipment is connected to the *controller* through the green slots, it can then be assigned a specific behavior on the corresponding channel in Kortex Web App. The channels are numbered 0 through 7.

Important: Make sure the arm is in the Idle *state* before you configure safety inputs. The arm is in the Idle state when the arm is switched off, but the controller is switched on.

Each input safety function is connected to two electrical inputs. When a safety function is triggered, the state changes on both electrical inputs simultaneously.

Likewise, each output safety function is connected to two electrical outputs. When a safety function is triggered, the state changes on both electrical outputs simultaneously.

A discrepancy in states between the two channels implies there is an electrical system fault or there is a device fault.

Safety inputs

Each input safety function can be assigned through *Kortex Web App* to one of eight channels. When a channel is assigned to a safety input, that safety input is no longer available on the other channels.

= KINOVA				SAFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00	8 s and a state off
① Safety I/Os					
Inputs	Outputs				*
Channel 0 1 Channel 1	Unassigned 2 Unassigned	•	Channel 4 1 Channel 5	Unassigned 2 Unassigned	•
Channel 2	Unassigned	~	• Channel 6	Unassigned	•
Channel 3	Unassigned	•	Channel 7	Unassigned	•
U POWER ON					

Access the **Safety I/Os** page by tapping **Safety > Safety I/Os**. The default pane is **Inputs**.

Figure 61: Safety inputs pane

1 Input channel 2 Safety behavior

The safety input behavior drop-down has several choices. Each safety input monitors a specific condition. The different conditions are listed in the safety input drop-down.



= KINOVa	
① Safety I/Os	
Inputs	Outputs
Channel 0	Unassigned Protective Stop with Manual Reset
Channel 1	Protective Stop Reset Protective Stop with Automatic Reset
Channel 2	Reduced mode Enabling device Acknowledge

Figure 62: Safety input functions

All safety digital inputs are *normally closed*. The behavior of *NC* changes depending on what configuration is assigned to the channel.

Safety input function name	Description
Unassigned	Channel behavior is not altered for the connected equipment.
Protective Stop with Manual Reset	The robot automatically comes to a <i>stop category</i> 2. When the input safety function is triggered, the program automatically pauses running.
	 After the signal is released, the user must reset the robot before it can resume operations. The robot must be in one of two operating modes. Automatic mode Hold-to-Run mode

Table 56: Input safety conditions available for each channel



Safety input function name	Description		
Protective Stop Reset	It resets a <i>protective stop</i> . The robot is in <i>Monitored stop</i> when it is in a protective stop. Use the reset input of the protective stop to resume operation.		
	The program resumes where it left off provided the program paused because of a Protective Stop with Manual Reset and provided no fault has occurred.		
	If an electrical system fault or a device fault occurs, the robot comes to a category 0 stop with no chance of resuming from the original paused location of the program.		
Protective Stop with Automatic Reset	The robot pauses its task automatically and comes to a stop category 2. After the signal is released, the robot resumes operation immediately.		
	When the input safety function is triggered, the program automatically pauses running.		
	After the fault is cleared or the intrusion is gone, the robot resumes operations.		
	The robot must be in one of two operating modes.		
	Automatic modeHold-to-Run mode		
Reduced Mode	The reduced speed limits are enforced in all operating modes as long as the signal is active. If the robot is moving at a speed higher than the reduced speed limit when reduced mode is triggered, the robot slows down and complies with the reduced speed.		
	The robot does not start operating in normal mode when the signal is released.		
	When there is an electrical system or device fault, the robot comes to a category 0 stop.		



Safety input function name	Description			
Enabling device	Connect an external <i>enabling device</i> to the controller and assign the corresponding channel the enabling device behavior. When one enabling device is pressed, regardless of where it is, the robot is enabled.			
	CAUTION: It is possible that more than one enabling device is connected. However, only one enabling device should be used at a time.			
	When there is an electrical system or device fault, the robot comes to a category 0 stop.			
Acknowledge Automatic Mode	The channel overrides the ACK button on the controller when Acknowledge Automatic Mode is not set on the Controller pane of the Robot page.			
	When the robot is operating in Automatic mode, the acknowledge safety input overrides the need to press the ACK button on the controller; the Acknowledge Automatic Mode dialog never launches at the start of running a program in Automatic mode.			

Input signals are compatible with devices that implement *OSSD* behavior. The pulsed *Output Signal Switching Device (OSSD)* signals are filtered with the period is less than 3 ms.

Safety outputs

Each output safety function can be assigned through *Kortex Web App* to one or more channels. When a channel is assigned to a safety output, that safety output is still available on the other channels.

Access safety outputs by tapping Safety > Safety I/Os > Outputs.



= KINOVA			safety checksum 00 00 00 00	ê	℃ Idle	Off
③ Safety I/Os						
Inputs 1	Outputs 2	1		2		•
Channel 0	Unassigned -	Channel 4	Unassigned		•	
Channel 1	Unassigned -	Channel 5	Unassigned		•	
Channel 2	Unassigned -	Channel 6	Unassigned		•	
Channel 3	Unassigned -	Channel 7	Unassigned		•	-
		U POWER ON				

Figure 63: Safety outputs pane

1 Output channel 2 Safety behavior

Each safety output monitors a specific condition. The different conditions are listed in the safety output menu. Connect Safety Output channels to external Safety monitoring devices, such as a PLC, to obtain live feedback on the state of safety functions.



= KINOVa	
③ Safety I/Os	
Inputs	Outputs
O Channel 0	Unassigned Emergency Stop
O Channel 1	Protective Stop Monitored Stop
O Channel 2	Arm Moving Normal Speed Mode
O Channel 3	Drive Power Unassigned

Figure 64: Safety output functions

Safety output function name	Description	
Unassigned	No output safety function is assigned for the connected equipment.	
	Important: When a factory reset is performed, any channel assigned to a safety output channel becomes unassigned. The output channels need to be reassigned.	
Emergency Stop	The output condition is set only when it is triggered by pressing an <i>E-stop</i> button; the safety function remains active even when the robot arm is switched off.	
	After the <i>E-stop</i> button is released and the fault is cleared, the safety function is inactive.	
Protective Stop	The output condition is set when the robot is currently in a Protective Stop.	



Safety output function name	Description
Monitored Stop	The channel signals the robot is waiting for user input; it makes sure there is no movement in any joint of the arm.
	The output condition is set only when the robot in the Monitored Stop operating mode.
Arm Moving	The channel signals the robot that the arm is currently moving, as is the case when the robot is in Hand Guiding, Manual Jog, Hold-to-Run, or Automatic mode.
Normal Speed Mode	The channel signal is raised when the robot is operating using the Normal Speed Safety Mode limits.
	It is triggered whenever the Normal Speed Mode is set and the Reduced Mode Safety function is not set.
Drive Power	The channel signal is raised when the actuator drives receive power.

Safety outputs set redundant hardware channels. For example, when the safety output function Emergency stop is assigned to channel 3, it actually is assigned to both AO_3 and BO_3. By using redundant hardware channels, load capacity, and the speed of switching between supplying and absorbing electricity is maximized.



Important: Although you can configure the channels to use the safety output functions, you cannot configure the hardware channels independently. For example, you cannot configure AO_3 and BO_3 to do different things.

Transitioning between giving and taking current is performed within 20 ms of triggering an output function. Any discrepancy between the channels during transitions does not exceed 5 ms.

Related topics

Installing the drive power indicator on page 97

State timelines of safety outputs

The majority of the state timelines of safety outputs are described through the different safety functions. However, there are two safety outputs that are not described by the safety functions.

Each safety output enters one of two states during operations.

A change in the state of the arm during different modes of operation dictate the state of each of the safety outputs. However, the Normal Speed Mode safety output may also depend on the selected Safety Mode.



Table 58: Safety output states that are described as safety function

Safety output state	Corresponding safety function
Unassigned	n/a
Emergency Stop	SF01 Emergency Stop
Protective Stop	SF02 Protective Stop
Monitored Stop	SF05 Monitored Stop
Arm Moving	n/a
Normal Speed Mode	n/a



Note: The safety output state **Unassigned** indicates that no safety output is assigned to the channel.

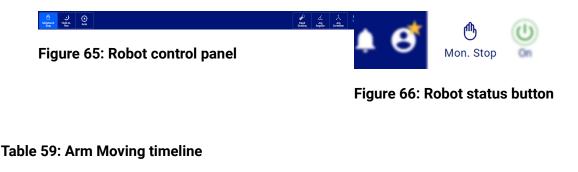
Related topics

SF01 Emergency stop timeline on page 63 SF02 Protective stop timeline on page 64 SF05 Monitored stop timeline on page 68 State timelines of safety functions on page 62

State timeline for the safety output Arm Moving

Each safety output enters one of two states during operations; it depends on the current state of the arm and the current mode of operation.

Equally important in knowing the timeline of a safety output is knowing where to find the current safety output status. To know the status of the safety output **Arm Moving**, look at what is highlighted in the Robot control panel or the robot status button in the robot status area. The current operating mode reflects the current status of Arm Moving.



Monitor frequency of trigger 0.02 s



The robot must be in one of the arm states to exit the Arm Moving state.
 Initialization Idle Maintenance Brake Release Fault power off Fault power on
Alternatively, the robot must be in the operating mode Monitored Stop.
The arm must be operational and the robot must be in one of the operating modes to enter the Arm Moving state.
 Automatic Hand Guiding Hold-to-Run Manual Jog

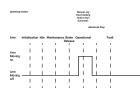


Figure 67: Timeline for the safety output Arm Moving

State timeline for the safety output Normal Speed Mode

Each safety output enters one of two states during operations.

Safety Mode is defined as either **Normal** speed or **Reduced** speed. To know the status of the **Normal Speed Mode**, look at the **Safety Mode** drop-down in different areas of Kortex Web App.

- Safety > Joint Limits > Speed Limits
- Safety > TCP & Elbow Limits > TCP Limits
- Safety > TCP & Elbow Limits > Elbow Limits
- **Programs** > <**select a program>**: the Program speed control area of the Robot control panel





Delay of trigger	0.02 s	
Trigger off	 Reduced is selected from the Safety Mode drop-down or in the Program speed control of the Robot control panel. The safety system is set to Reduced. 	
Trigger on	 Normal is selected from the Safety Mode drop-down or in the Program speed control of the Robot control panel. The safety system is set to Normal. The safety system is transitioning from Reduced to Normal. 	

Table 60: Normal Speed Mode timeline

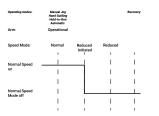


Figure 68: Timeline for the safety output Normal Speed Mode

Related topics

SF04 Joint speed monitoring timeline on page 67 SF06 Protection zone monitoring timeline on page 69 SF07 TCP and Elbow speed monitoring timeline on page 71

Installing the drive power indicator

The drive power indicator is a light that indicates that the drive power in the actuator is on.

About this task

The drive power indicator connects through the green channel slots on the *controller*. To conform to UL1740 requirements, the indicator must illuminate yellow or amber.

Procedure

- 1. Choose either a yellow or amber light to conform to UL1740 requirements.
- 2. Connect the indicator to the controller through the green slots on the controller.



Tip: Pay attention to which green slot is used physically to connect the indicator. You have to use the same numbered channel in Kortex Web App.

3. Tap Safety.



4. Tap **Drive Power** from the list of outputs to the channel on which the indicator is physically connected to on the controller.

Results

The indicator illuminates when the drive power is on. **Related topics** Safety outputs on page 91

Safety checksums

The *administrator* needs a quick way to look at the robot and walk away with peace of mind knowing the safety configurations he put in place are working as expected.

The safety checksum is a human readable hexadecimal value displayed beside the Notification icon. It is the value calculated from the *SCU* and the *MPU*, using *Cyclic redundancy check (CRC)*, on all safety parameters.

Whenever the arm is switched on, the *MPU* safety parameter checksum is compared with the *SCU* safety parameter checksum. When a safety parameter is changed, a new checksum is calculated by the *MPU* and compared against the *SCU* checksum.

The administrator can look at the safety checksum and know whether someone has modified any of the safety configurations. They can know from a glance whether any safety configurations are failing. They can write configuration build instructions for their environment and list the checksum for other administrators to know the valid safety checksum.

If the safety parameter checksums do not match, the robot enters a fault state in which the administrator must manually correct all safety parameter values. This task is not time-consuming provided there is a configuration build instruction available that includes the valid safety checksum value.

Parameters that are the basis for the safety checksum

The calculation of the safety checksum is based on the configuration of the safety functions, the state of each of the safety functions, and calibration files.



Table 61: Checksum parameters

Safety parameter	Description
Configuration of safety inputs	Binding between safety input channels and the configured function
	Example: Channel 1 is assigned to the function Enabling device .
Configuration of safety outputs	Binding between safety output channels and the configured function
	Example: Channel 4 is assigned to the function Monitored stop
SF03	Safety joint position limit monitoring for joints 1 to 7
SF04	Safety joint speed monitoring for reduced speed limits for joints 1 to 7
	Safety joint speed monitoring for normal speed limits for joints 1 to 7
SF05	Monitored stop has no parameters
SF06	Protection zone monitoring
	 Position of all configured protection zones Shape type (sphere, cylinder, rectangular prism) Dimensions of all configured protection zones Orientation of all oplindrical and priamatic
	 Orientation of all cylindrical and prismatic protection zones Activation status: enabled or disabled
	Tool Sphere
	Position (X,Y,Z)Dimension





Safety parameter	Description
SF07	Safety TCP monitoring
	 Translation speed normal speed mode limit
	 Orientation speed normal speed mode limit
	 Translation speed reduced speed mode limit
	Orientation speed reduced speed mode limit
	Safety Elbow monitoring
	Translation speed normal speed mode limit
	 Translation speed reduced speed mode limit

Arm calibration

Microscopic assembly defects are compensated by the firmware of the robot when the arm is calibrated.

The calibration package contains the default calibration file associated with the serial number found on the arm, its checksum, and the serial number of the arm.

The calibration file contains a few vital pieces of information.

- Calibration date
- Serial number of the arm
- Geometric calibration parameters
- Elasto-static calibration parameters

Access the status of the arm at **Systems > Robot > Arm > Calibration**.





KINOVa		safety checksum 00 00 00 00	ê	🔥 (Mon. Stop
obot		Data	was refreshed 3	minutes ago 🛛 C
Controller	Arm	Force Torque Sen	sor	
Gravity Vector				~
Payload				~
Calibration				^
Status				CALIBRATED
Import calibration file				Import [_†]
Export calibration file				Export 🞵
Restore neutral calibration				
		RESTORE		
Hold-to-		م م Hand	Jog Angular Ca	L Enabling

Figure 69: Arm calibration status

The arm calibration can be in one of three states.

Table 62: Arm calibration states

State	Description
Not Calibrated	The controller is switched on and validation of the calibration file is not yet started.
	The neutral calibration package is selected and used.
	The neutral calibration package is used because the validation of the selected calibration package fails.



State	Description
Waiting Arm Power On	The controller is switched on and validation of the calibration file is successful.
	The serial number does not match the serial number in the calibration file; the arm cannot power on.
	<i>Tip:</i> To recover from this situation, restore the neutral calibration file and reboot the controller.
Calibrated	The controller is switched on, the calibration file is valid, and the arm serial number is valid.

Exporting calibration files

When you first switch on your Link 6, save the default arm calibration package. Use the exported arm calibration package to communicate with Kinova support if anything goes wrong when you first start your robot.

About this task

If you have multiple Link 6 units, you may want tot save a backup calibration package for each unit. Each backup calibration package can be re-uploaded on controllers if you end up inadvertently matching an arm with a controller that is not its original controller.

The default arm calibration file is also known as the neutral arm calibration file. It can be used to back up the default calibration for a specific arm.



Important: Only an administrator can export calibration files.

Procedure

Procedure

- 1. Insert a USB into the controller.
- 2. Tap Systems > Robot > Arm > Calibration..
- **3.** Tap **Export** in the **Export calibration file** pane.

A Select mount to export dialog launches with the name of the USB drive.

4. Tap EXPORT.



Note: Tap CANCEL when you do not want to export the current calibration package.



Results

The current arm calibration is saved as a zip file on the USB drive.

What to do next

Remember to remove the USB from the controller and store the USB in a safe place.

Importing arm calibration files

You may want to calibrate the arm with the default neutral file, the last saved file, or a completely different calibration file.

Before you begin

Kinova keeps archives of the calibration package of each unit. The calibration package contains the data obtained during calibration in our factory. If you misplace the calibration file of your arm, contact support@kinova.ca to provide you with the original calibration package that matches your arm.

About this task

All imported calibration packages are verified before storing it in the controller.



Important: Calibration packages can be imported only when the controller is idle and the arm is switched off.



Important: Only an administrator can import calibration files.

Procedure

Procedure

- 1. Insert a USB into the controller.
- 2. Tap Systems > Robot > Arm > Calibration..
- 3. Tap Import in the Import calibration file.

A dialog launches with a list of all arm calibration packages on the USB drive.

- 4. Tap the name of the calibration package that you want to import.
- 5. Tap PROCEED.



Note: Tap CANCEL when you do not want to export the current calibration package.

Results

The selected arm calibration is saved in the controller.



Note: If, for any reason, the imported calibration file cannot validate, the neutral calibration file is installed and the arm is listed as being Not Calibrated.



What to do next

Verify whether the arm calibration package imported successfully.

- Tap Systems > Robot > Arm > Calibration.
 - ° Success: the arm is listed as Calibrated
 - ° Failure: the arm is listed as Not calibrated
- Diagnostics > Status > Controller and check the status of Serial number mismatch between arm and calibration file.
 - ^o Success: the status icon is green with a check mark
 - ° Failure: the status icon is red



Note: When the arm is listed as **Not Calibrated** and the status is green, the neutral arm calibration package is running. All movements are less accurate.

Preventing an unrecoverable fault

If you exchange a controller or arm, the robot may enter a fault state.

About this task

Link 6 has a serial number. The calibration file is associated with the serial number. A change in parts means a change in serial number. A change in serial number means the calibration file cannot function on the new parts and the system enters a fault state.

Unrecoverable faults due to exchanges of parts are preventable.

Procedure

1. Make sure you have a copy of the current configuration file for the old arm and controller.

If you cannot find the calibration file for the robot before exchanging parts, export the calibration file.



Tip: If ever you put the old arm back in place, you already have its specific calibration ready to go.

- 2. Switch off the arm and the controller of Link 6.
- **3.** Exchange the arm or controller.
- 4. Switch on the controller and keep the arm switched off.
- 5. Perform one of two actions.
 - Restore the calibration file for the arm by tapping Systems > Robot > Controller > RESTORE.
 - Import the correct calibration file by tapping Systems > Robot > Controller > Import and selecting the correct file.



6. Switch on the arm.

Results

The robot is operational. **Related topics** Configuring the arm for robot controls on page 187 Importing arm calibration files on page 103 Exporting calibration files on page 102 Recovering from an unrecoverable fault on page 105

Recovering from an unrecoverable fault

If you exchange a controller or arm, and the calibration file is associated with the old controller or arm, you can still recover from the fault.

About this task

It is assumed that the steps in preventing the fault from occurring were accidentally omitted when the parts were exchanged.

It is assumed Link 6 is running.

Procedure

- 1. Switch off the arm.
- 2. Switch off the controller.
- 3. Switch on the controller.
- 4. Perform one of two actions.
 - Restore the calibration file for the arm by tapping Systems > Robot > Controller > RESTORE.
 - Import the correct calibration file by tapping Systems > Robot > Controller > Import and selecting the correct file.
- 5. Switch on the arm.

Results

The robot is operational. **Related topics** Configuring the arm for robot controls on page 187 Exporting calibration files on page 102 Preventing an unrecoverable fault on page 104



Modes of operation of Link 6

The robot enters different *states* and *modes* during operation. The states often have a visual component for the user to recognize. The modes, which is how the user interacts with the robot, have a visual component for the user to recognize.

The basic modes of operation require user intervention.

- Startup
- Operation
- Recovery

Within each of the basic modes are internal modes and states.

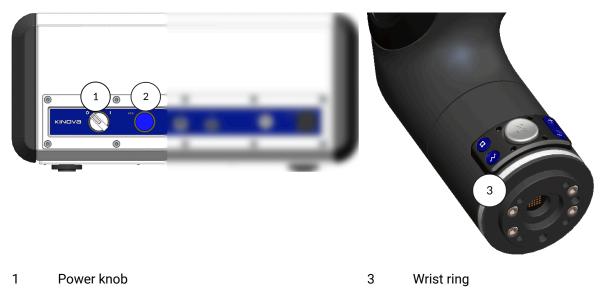
There are three places to look for cues to determine what state the robot is in.

- Controller
- Wrist
- Kortex Web App

Location of lights to watch on the controller and the wrist

Communication between the robot and the user is achieved by lights found on the controller and around the *wrist ring*.

Table 63: Controller and arm when Link 6 is off



2 ACK button



Convention for the representation of the states

In an attempt to help visualize what is happening, the graphics follow a convention for flashing lights. In every case, the number of lines represent the number of flashes of light for each second.

• A single line coming out the sides of what is supposed to be the lit portion of equipment indicates one flash for each second. The color of the lines represents the color of the lights.

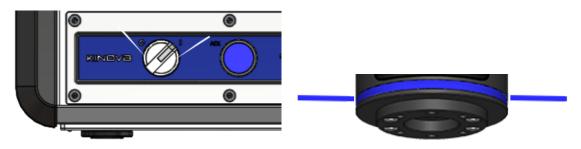
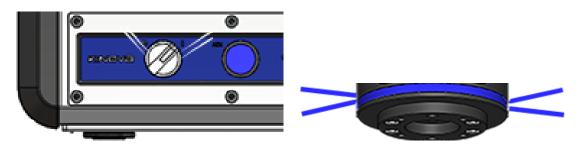


Figure 70: Example of equipment flashing once per second

Two lines coming out the sides of what is supposed to be the lit portion of equipment indicates two flashes for each second. The color of the lines represents the color of the lights.





There also is a table that explains what each portion of a graphic is attempting to represent.

Complete start-up sequence

It is a two-part process to start up Link 6: first turn on the *controller* and then the *arm*. This twopart process means the robot goes through six different *states*.

Off – Controller initialization – Controller idle – Arm initialization – Arm maintenance – *Monitored stop*

State: Off

Link 6 is off and is not energized when the power button on the *controller* is switched off.

Before you start working with the *arm*, make sure it is off. When it is off, all lights are extinguished.



I

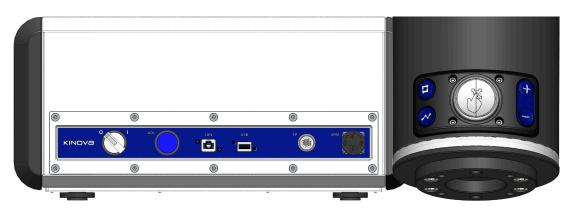


Figure 72: Controller when it is off

Figure 73: Wrist ring when it is off

Important: If there is a light on the controller power knob, turn off Link 6 by turning the power knob to the off position.

Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description
Power knob points to the O, or off, position.	No light illuminates from the wrist.	Arm does not receive power.
No light illuminates on the controller power knob.	-	
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	-	

The startup workflow begins with switching on the controller and switching on the arm.

State: Controller initialization

When the knob on the *controller* is turned to the I, or on, position the controller is in its initialization state.



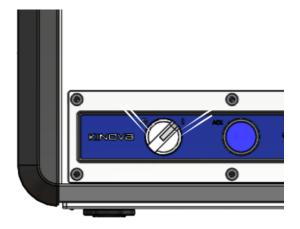


Figure 74: Visual cues for controller initialization

Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description
Power knob points to the I, or on, position.	No light illuminates from the wrist.	Controller receives power.
Power knob on the controller flashes white twice (2) each second.	_	Processors in controller boot.
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	_	Application software for the I/ O boards and teach pendant, if installed, start.
		Calibration, configuration, and safety checks are validated.

When the light behind the power button is a steady white, the initialization of the controller is complete. The controller enters a new state: Idle.

State: Controller idle

When Link 6 is in the idle state, there is power in the *controller*, but not in the *arm*.

You can recognize the Idle state by looking at the power button on the controller; its light is a steady white.



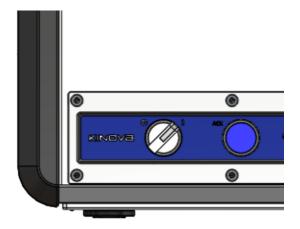


Figure 75: Controller when it is idle

Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	No light illuminates from the wrist.	Controller is fully operational and idle.
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.		Arm is not on.

State: Arm initialization

After you turn on the *arm* from *Kortex Web App*, the arm needs to initialize itself, much like the *controller*.

Arm initialization is recognized by looking at the white light of the power knob on the controller and at the light around the wrist.





Figure 76: Visual cues of arm initialization

Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description
Power knob on the controller	Wrist ring flashes white once (1)	Arm is receiving power.
flashes white twice (2) each second.	each second.	Arm is <i>booting</i> up the <i>actuators</i> and is checking the <i>firmware</i> and software are compatible with the arm.
Power knob on the controller flashes white twice (2) each	_	Kortex Web App displays the state as Initialized .
second.		

Important: The wrist ring flashes white when the arm is switched on to ensure the functionality of all components of the wrist ring light. White uses all components of the wrist ring lights; it can be used to validate the functionality of the hardware, in accordance with IEC60204. If the wrist ring is not white, report the situation immediately to support@kinova.ca.

If the hardware needs a firmware update, the arm enters the Arm maintenance state and returns to the Arm initialization state after maintenance is complete. Firmware updates take approximately 5 minutes.

After the arm is initialized and the firmware is up-to-date, the brakes in the actuators release.

The brakes in each actuator for each joint are released one at a time in a specific sequence. The sequential release keeps the robot steady when it is powering up.



State: Arm maintenance

Maintenance only happens when the *firmware* must be updated.

After the firmware is updated, the robot restarts the Arm initialization process to make sure there are no other issues.

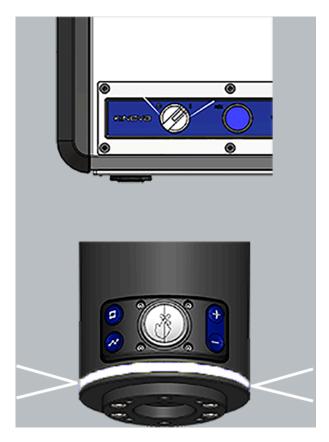


Figure 77: Visual cues of arm maintenance in progress

Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description
Power knob on the controller flashes white once (1) each second.	Wrist ring flashes white twice (2) each second.	<i>Microcontrollers</i> on the <i>actuators</i> receive firmware updates.
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	-	<i>Kortex Web App</i> displays the state as Initialized .

After firmware is updated, the Arm initialization state restarts.

State: Monitored stop

Link 6 is ready to be used and is in a standstill position; it is waiting for user input.



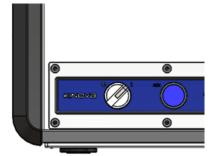




Figure 78: Visual cues of robot in Monitored stop

Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	Wrist ring illuminates blue steadily.	Mechanical brakes in the <i>arm</i> are released.
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	-	The arm is fully operational and is waiting for commands.

Related topics

Stop categories on page 53

State: Fault

Link 6 can stop unexpectedly or may need to stop suddenly.

There are a few main ways the robot can stop suddenly.

- The arm exceeds the configured safety limits for position; a protective stop has been issued to the arm.
- Someone presses the emergency stop button.
- A fault is detected. Faults are failures in internal, built-in tests and safety functions.

The SCU is responsible for triggering a stop category 0 fault; no power is in the arm

The Main Control Unit (MCU) is responsible for triggering the fault; the wrist ring illuminates red.



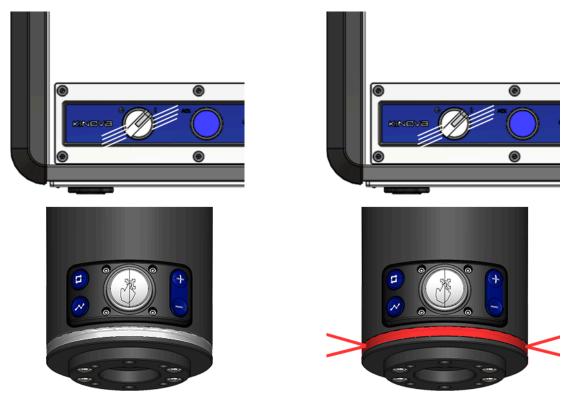


Figure 79: Visual cue of fault without power

Figure 80: Visual cue of fault with power

Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description
Power knob on the controller flashes white four (4) times each second.	No light illuminates from the wrist.	An internal fault occurred.
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	-	There is no power in the arm.
Power knob on the controller flashes white four (4) times each second.	Wrist ring flashes red twice (2) each second.	An internal fault occurred.
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	-	There is power in the arm.

Related topics

KINOVA

Recovery mode on page 122

Why can the robot not exit Recovery mode? on page 352



Operating modes

When the *controller* and *arm* are on, Link 6 is in the Monitored Stop state and can be used in any of the modes of operation available to it.

Each mode of operation is a way in interacting with the robot to make it move.

- Manual Jog
- Hand Guiding
- Hold-to-Run
- Automatic

Related topics

Stop categories on page 53

Mode: Manual Jog

Use the mode Manual Jog to move the *arm* with *Kortex Web App*. There are two jog interfaces: *Cartesian* control and joint, or *angular*, control.

There are a few requirements before you start moving the arm.

- Use the *teach pendant enabling device*. If the *pendant* is not available, use an external *enabling device* connected to the *controller*. The enabling device must be pressed down and held in its center position.
- There must be a request for movement coming from Kortex Web App.



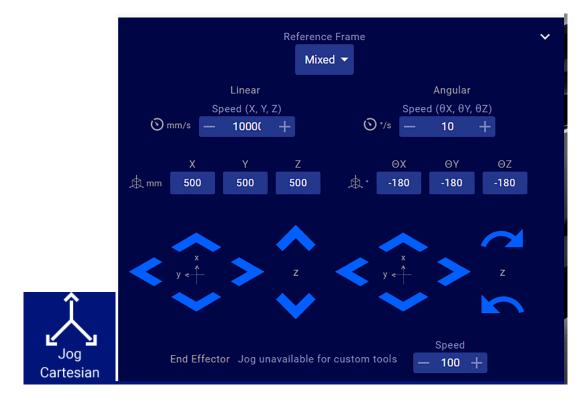


Figure 81: Jog Cartesian icon and control panel



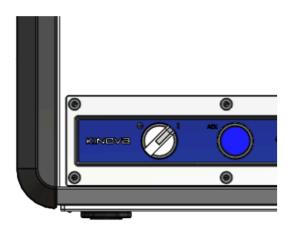
Figure 82: Jog angular icon and control panel





Figure 83: Location of enabling device on the teach pendant

When the robot is in the mode Manual Jog, there is a steady, white light behind the power knob on the controller and a steady, blue light on the wrist.







Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description		
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	Wrist ring illuminates white steadily.	Move the arm in any direction with Kortex Web App while		
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	_	holding the pendant enabling device in the pressed position.		

When the robot is in Manual mode, Link 6 operates strictly in Reduced safety speeds to reduce the possibility of injury.

Exit Manual jog mode by releasing the enabling device. Link 6 returns to the *Monitored stop* state.

Related topics

Safety modes on page 61

Jog Angular panel on page 289

² Disclaimer: the color of the hardware in the image may differ from your installation



Jog Cartesian panel on page 287

Mode: Hand Guiding

Use Hand Guiding mode to move the robot to a specific location by using one hand.

While keeping the *wrist enabling device* pressed in the middle position, move the *arm* up or down, left or right, forward or backwards, as well as rotate the arm or the wrist around any of the joints.



Figure 85: Center button on the wrist is the wrist enabling device button

The arm stops moving when the wrist enabling device is not pressed or when it is pressed completely.

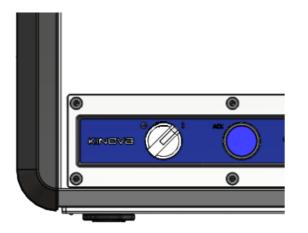




Figure 86: Visual cues of the Hand Guiding mode

Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	Wrist ring illuminates white steadily.	Move the arm in any direction while holding the wrist enabling
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	-	device button in the pressed position.

Within the Hand Guiding mode are two different Guidance modes.



Cartesian



Warning: Cartesian Hand Guiding uses sensors situated internally to the wrist. To avoid unintentional movement, it is recommended to manipulate the arm from the wrist only during Cartesian Hand Guiding.

• Angular

Enable Hand Guiding mode by pressing the *wrist enabling device*. Press the Hand Guiding mode Toggle button to enable one of the two Hand Guiding modes.



Figure 87: Location of Hand Guiding mode Toggle on the wrist

When the robot is in Hand Guiding mode, Link 6 operates strictly in Reduced safety speeds to reduce the possibility of injury.

Related topics

Safety modes on page 61 Hand Guiding panel on page 285

Mode: Hold-to-Run

Hold-to-Run is a special mode available only to users with *admin* privileges.

The Hold-to-Run mode is used to develop and verify a programmed sequence works as expected before the program is release to other users.

Hold-to-Run is also used for troubleshooting a situation with the robot. Robotic movement can be slowed during this mode to ease observing the actual actions in the programmed sequence.

To be able to move the *arm*, an *enabling device* must be on.



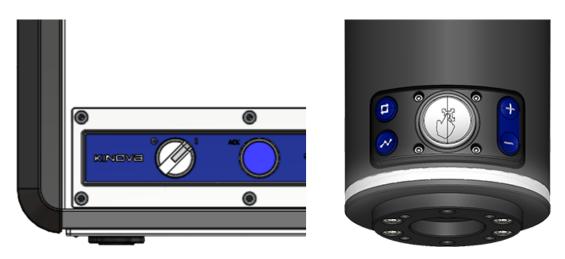


Figure 88: Visual cues of the mode Hold-to-Run when there is no issue

Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	Wrist ring illuminates white steadily.	The selected program is ready to be verified.
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	-	

When the robot is in Hold-to-Run mode, Link 6 can operate in either Reduced or Normal safety speeds. By default, the robot operates in Reduced safety speeds to reduce the possibility of injury.



DANGER: Do not attempt to use the wrist buttons when a program is running and the robot is in Hold-to-Run mode; it can result in serious injury.

Related topics

User management on page 161 Running a program in Automatic mode on page 295 Safety modes on page 61 Running a program in Hold-to-Run mode on page 296

Mode: Automatic

Known as the normal mode of operation, it is used to play a *program sequence* that has been validated.

When the robot is in Automatic mode, Link 6 can operate in either Reduced or Normal safety speeds. By default, the robot operates in Normal safety speeds.

One of the first things the robot does when Automatic mode is selected is to activate all safeties, even those that are suspended due to an event or user interaction.





Figure 89: Visual cues for the Automatic mode

Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	Wrist ring illuminates green steadily.	The selected program is ready to be run.
ACK button on the controller flashes blue once (1) each second.		

When the robot is in Automatic mode and the *E-stop* is pressed, the robot stops automatically and no power feeds the robot.

When the robot is in Automatic mode and the robot enters a protective stop, the robot stops. However, once the issue is corrected and the ACK button is pressed, the robot can resume the program.



DANGER: When the robot is operating in Automatic mode, never attempt to control the robot by grabbing the arm or touching the controls on the wrist. Attempting to control the robot when it is moving in Automatic mode can result in injury.



Tip: Control the robot safely when it is not moving.

Related topics

Safety modes on page 61

Running a program in Automatic mode on page 295

Running a program in Automatic mode with acknowledgment Canceling a program running in Automatic mode



Recovery mode

Some faults stop the robot in a state that triggers the same fault after it has been cleared. These are the faults that require a recovery strategy for the robot.

There are several ways a fault can be cleared and leave the robot in a fault state. One example is a robot enters a *protection zone* and stops. The fault is cleared using *Kortex Web App*, but the *arm* is still within the protection zone.

There is only one way to get out of recovery mode. Move the robot to a safe position using either Hand Guiding or Manual Jog. All position-related safeties are ignored during recovery. All joint speed safety limits are limited to a maximum speed of 30 °/s.

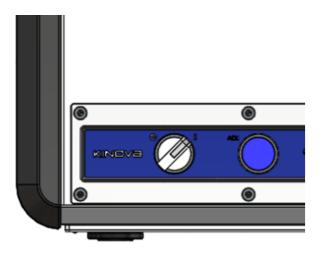




Figure 90: Visual cues of robot in Recovery

Controller lights	Wrist ring	Description
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	Wrist ring illuminates red steadily.	intervention that involves using
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	-	Kortex Web App and the wrist enabling device.

Related topics

State: Fault on page 113

Why can the robot not exit Recovery mode? on page 352

Robot lights and what they mean: a reference

You can tell which mode or state the robot is currently in by looking at the lights on the *controller* and on the *wrist ring* on the *arm*.



122



Description	Meaning		
Power knob points to the O, or off, position.	Controller is off.		
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.			
Power knob on the controller flashes	Controller is powering on.		
white twice (2) each second.	Processors in controller boot.		
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	Application software for the I/O boards and teach pendant, if installed, start.		
	Calibration, configuration, and safety checks are validated.		
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	Controller is fully operational and idle.		
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	Arm is not on.		
Power knob on the controller flashes white twice (2) each second.	Arm is powering on.		
Power knob on the controller flashes white twice (2) each second.	-		
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	Controller checks whether the <i>firmware</i> in the arm matches the firmware in the software unit in the controller.		
Wrist ring illuminates white steadily.	<i>Kortex Web App</i> displays the state first as Initialized and then as Brakes Released during this stage unless a firmware updates is required. If firmware updates are required, Kortex Web App displays first Initialized , then Maintenance , and then Brakes Released .		
Power knob on the controller flashes white once (1) each second.	Firmware updates. Important: Firmware in the arm updates right after		
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	powering on the arm only when an update occurs in the software unit in the controller.		
Power knob on the controller flashes white twice (2) each second.	Kortex Web App displays the state as Maintenance .		

Table 64: What the lights on the controller and the wrist ring on the arm mean



Description	Meaning
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	The arm is fully operational and is in <i>Monitored stop</i> .
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	Kortex Web App displays the state first as Brakes Released and then as Operational .
Wrist ring illuminates blue steadily.	-
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	Link 6 is operating in Hold-to-Run mode or is waiting for confirmation to operate in Automatic mode.
ACK button on the controller flashes blue once (1) each second.	-
Wrist ring illuminates white steadily.	-
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	The robot is operating either in Hold-to-Run mode or in Automatic mode.
ACK button on the controller flashes blue once (1) each second.	The program is running and the <i>enabling device</i> has not been pressed for over five (5) minutes.
Wrist ring illuminates green steadily.	It is also possible that the configured speed is greater than the reduced mode speed.
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	The robot is operating in Manual Jog mode.
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	Move the arm in any direction with Kortex Web App and with the enabling device pressed in the middle position.
Wrist ring illuminates white steadily.	-
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	The robot is operating in Hand Guiding mode.
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	Move the arm in any direction while holding the wrist enabling device button in the middle position.
Wrist ring illuminates white steadily.	-
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	The robot is waiting for confirmation to proceed operations in Automatic mode.
ACK button on the controller flashes blue once (1) each second.	-
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	The robot is in Recovery mode.



Description	Meaning					
Wrist ring illuminates red steadily.	The arm of the Link 6 is outside the area in which it is allowed to					
Wrist ring illuminates red steadily.	be in, such as within a <i>protection zone</i> , or one or more of the oints is outside its safety limits.					
Power knob on controller illuminates white steadily.	The robot is recovering from an emergency stop caused by pressing the <i>E-stop</i> button.					
ACK button on the controller illuminates blue steadily.	_					
No light illuminates from the wrist.	-					
Power knob on the controller flashes white four (4) times each second.	An internal fault occurred.					
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	There is no power in the arm.					
No light illuminates from the wrist.	-					
Wrist ring flashes white four (4) times each second.	An internal fault occurred.					
ACK button on the controller does not illuminate.	There is power in the arm.					
Wrist ring illuminates red steadily.	The joint or zone limit is reached.					

Related topics

Indicators, user profile, and power on page 153



Hardware installation

Link 6 requires installation in the working environment.

Installation involves placing the *arm* where it is going to be performing tasks, placing the *controller* within the constraints of the length of the cable to the arm in an accessible location, and making sure the robot is installed according to safety guidelines.

Before unpacking, the *integrator* should already know the size of the robot from the technical specifications, have performed a risk assessment, and be familiar with the safety considerations.



Important: Always place the boxes so that the arrows on the boxes point up to avoid possible damage to the equipment.

Related topics

Safety directives and warnings on page 48

Inside the Link 6 boxes

Link 6 comes in two cardboard boxes. Both boxes are heavy. It is advisable to have two people carry each box.

The smaller box contains the *controller*, a box with the accessories, and a box with the *teach pendant*. The box with accessories contains the power cord for the controller, as well as all optional accessories bought with Link 6.

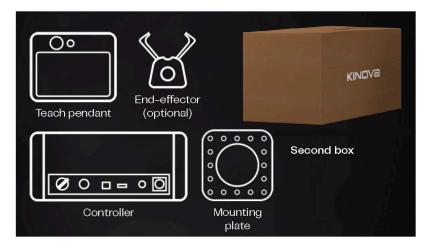


Figure 91: Box with controller, mounting plate, accessories box, and teach pendant box

The larger box contains the arm, along with its cable attached to the base of the arm.



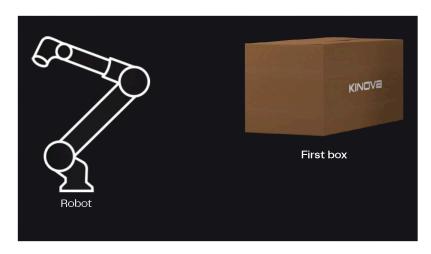


Figure 92: Box with arm and attached cable

Related topics Accessories on page 333 Components on page 12

Unpacking the arm

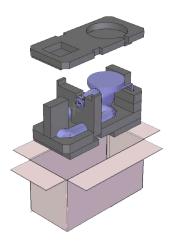
The box containing the *arm* is the larger of the two Link 6 boxes.

About this task

It is recommended to unpack the contents of the arm box at the installation site for the arm.

Procedure

- **1.** Make sure the arrows on the box are pointing upward.
- 2. Open the larger box.
- **3.** Lift the layer of foam off and set it aside.





4. Remove the arm from the box.

Considerations before installing the arm

The *arm* is heavy and large. It is advisable for two people to be involved in unpacking and installing the arm.

Make sure the box that contains the arm is near the area where the arm is to be installed. Have all the tools and screws necessary for installing the arm easily accessible at the mounting location.

Wherever the arm is installed, there is a set of guidelines that should be followed.

- Make sure all the tools and screws necessary to install the arm are easily accessible at the mounting location.
- Make sure the surface on which the arm is to be mounted is flat within 0.1 mm.
- Make sure the surface on which the arm is to be mounted is stiff enough so that it does not degrade the task to be performed by the robot.



DANGER: When the mounting surface where the arm is not sufficiently sturdy, the arm could become a hazard to people and equipment around it.

- Make sure you know which installation approach is required: directly on a surface or on a mounting plate.
- Have a minimum of two (2) people for safe installation for any orientation installation that is not on a flat, horizontal surface.
- Make sure to adjust the gravity vector for any orientation installation that is not on a flat, horizontal surface.
- Use the mounting dowel holes when your installation requires the robot to be repositioned accurately at the same place.



DANGER: The arm could be unstable until is fixed securely.

The arm must be kept within specific temperatures ranges during storage and use.

Table 65: Safe temperatures for the arm

Action	Minimum temperature	Maximum temperature
Storage	-40 °C	65 °C
Powering up	0 °C	40 °C
Operating	-20 °C	40 °C

Related topics

Safety directives and warnings on page 48

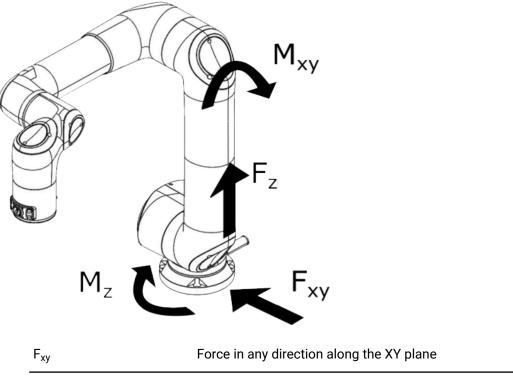


Configurations for the robot settings on page 185

Base force reactions

The base feels the forces whenever any part of the arm moves.

The calculation includes the forces and moments created from the weight of the robot and its dynamic properties. The calculation does not include any of the equipment fitted on the robot.



Fz	Force along the Z plane
M _{xy}	Moment that acts on the robot base along the XY plane
Mz	Moment that acts on the robot base along the Z plane

Figure 93: Floor-mounted safety forces

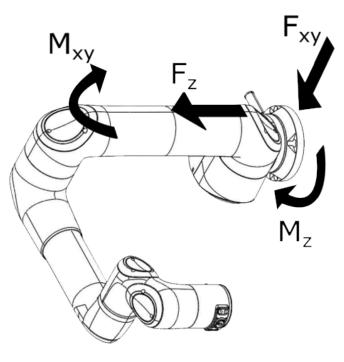
Table 66: Safety factor applied on load cases when the base is mounted on the floor

Load case details	Vertical Moment	Min	Vertical Force	Min	Horizontal Moment	Min	Horizontal Force	Min
	Mx N∙m		Fz N		Mz N∙m		Fxy	
	Max		Max		Max		Max	
At rest	352	-352	-602	-602	0	0	0	0





Load case details	Vertical Moment	Min	Vertical Force	Min	Horizontal Moment	Min	Horizontal Force	Min
	Mx N∙m		Fz N		Mz N∙m		Fxy	
	Max		Max		Max		Max	
At maximum speed	210	210	57	-1262	0	0	899	-899
No acceleration								
At maximum servoing acceleration	529	-529	188	-1003	500	-500	773	-773
Maximum speed								
At maximum braking torque	634	-634	334	-1421	600	-600	896	-896
Emergency stop maximum speed								



F _{xy}	Force in any direction along the XY plane
F _z	Force along the Z plane
M _{xy}	Moment that acts on the robot base along the XY plane
Mz	Moment that acts on the robot base along the Z plane





Load case details	Vertical Moment	Min	Vertical Force	Min	Horizontal Moment	Min	Horizontal Force	Min
	Mx N∙m		Fz N		Mz N∙m		Fxy	
	Max		Max		Max		Max	
At rest	352	-352	0	0	0	0	-602	-602
At maximum speed								
No acceleration	210	210	659	-659	0	0	297	-1502
At maximum servoing acceleration								
Maximum speed	529	-529	802	-802	500	-500	80	-1285
At maximum braking torque								
Emergency stop maximum speed	634	-634	937	-937	600	-600	-105	-1421

Table 67: Safety factor applied on load cases when the base is mounted on the wall

Installing the arm directly to a surface

One way to install the arm is directly to a surface, without a mounting plate.

Before you begin

Personnel

• Number of Workers: 2 when the orientation installation is not on a flat, horizontal surface

Supplies

• 4 x M8 socket head cap screws, grade 12.9 steel



Note: Torque: 20 N·m



Note: An equivalent imperial 5/16 in screw with equal or better mechanical properties and underhead contact patch can be used.

• 2 x 8 mm dowels

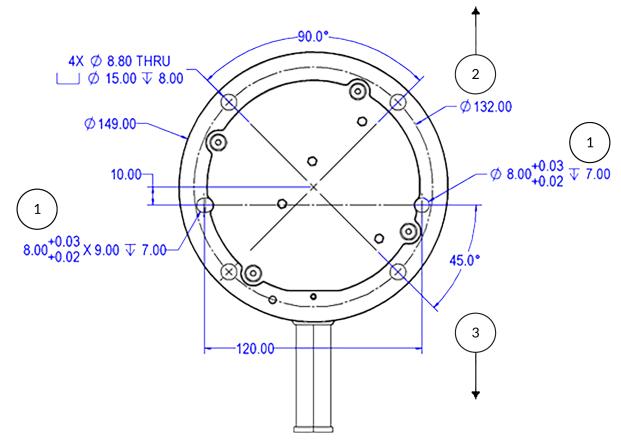
About this task

The arm is in a flat packaging pose to minimize the amount of space it takes in its packaging. This packaging pose also eases installation.



Procedure

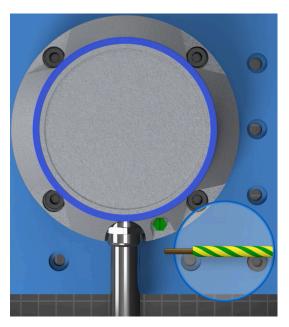
1. Define the location and prepare the surface according to the mounting pattern drawing.



- 1 Dowel hole feature for optional dowel pins; 2 Front; 3 Back
- 2. Place the arm on the surface with the holes of the *base* lining up with the holes of the surface.
- 3. Secure the base with 5 mm hex key according to the hardware requirement.



4. Secure the green ground cable to the *protective earth* at the back of the base using the green screw.



5. Remove the protective covering from the arm.

Related topics

Specifications and dimensions of the base of the arm on page 13 Safety on page 47 Safety directives and warnings on page 48

Installing the arm on a third-party adapter plate

One way to install the *arm* is to install it on a mounting plate.

About this task

Follow the installation procedure outlined in the third-party documentation. **Related topics** Specifications and dimensions of the base of the arm on page 13 Safety on page 47 Safety directives and warnings on page 48

Unpacking the controller

The box containing the *controller* is the smaller box, but it contains all the accessories bought with Link 6, as well as the power cord for the controller.



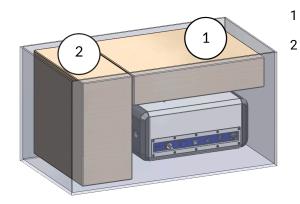
About this task

Unpack on a stable surface clear of other objects to make unpacking easier. It is recommended to unpack the contents of the controller box near the installation site for the controller.

Procedure

- 1. Make sure the arrows on the box are pointing upward.
- 2. Open the smaller box.

Two cardboard boxes become accessible.



- Accessories box
- Teach pendant box

- 3. Remove the accessories and teach pendant boxes and place them on a stable surface.
- **4.** Open the boxes and make sure everything you bought is there.
- 5. Remove the items from their foam wrapping one at a time and set them aside in a safe place.
- 6. Take out the Quick start guide and place it in an accessible location.
- 7. Remove the controller from the box and place it on a table.

Considerations before installing the controller

The *controller* must be installed on a stable surface. The surface must be able to support the weight of the controller without becoming deformed or unstable.

There are several ways in which the controller can be installed.

- Placed on a stable surface, such as a table.
- Secured to a stable surface, such as a table.
- · Secured to a wall.
- Secured it in a stable cabinet, either on a shelf or on the wall of the cabinet.



Note: When the controller must be secured to a wall or to the inside wall of a cabinet, it is recommended to use the optional Kinova wall bracket.

Wherever the controller is installed, there is a set of guidelines that should be followed.





- Do not put anything on top of the controller.
- · Make sure the controller has ample space around it.
- Make sure the controller is not in a position where it can be bumped.
- Make sure the controller is installed less than the attaching cable length away from the arm; the cable that connects the arm to the controller has a finite length and the route the cable must take must be taken into account.
- Make sure there is at least a 50 cm gap in the back where the fans are installed.
- Make sure 10 cm on the side from a wall to maintain proper air flow around the controller.
- Make sure the I/O panel and the controls on the front of the controller are easy to access.
- Make sure the LED on the power knob and on the ACK button are visible.



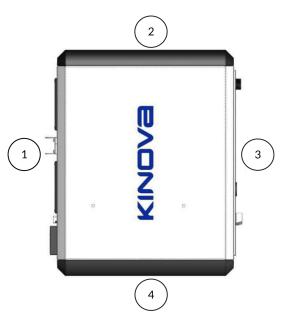
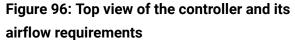


Figure 95: Linear perspective of the controller and its airflow requirements



- 1 Minimum 50 cm from the wall for fan airflow
- 2 Minimum 10 cm from the wall
- 3 Easy access to connectors, switches, and LED status
- 4 Easy access to I/O panel

If there is no access to the underside of the installation surface and there is no need to fix it, leave the controller on its four rubber feet. However, if there is a need to fix it and it cannot be fixed to the installation surface, use the optional Kinova wall bracket.

The controller must be kept within specific temperatures ranges during storage and use.



Action	Minimum temperature	Maximum temperature
Storage	-40 °C	65 °C
Powering up	0 °C	40 °C
Operating	-20 °C	40 °C

Table 68: Safe temperatures for the controller

Related topics

Controller mounting interface on page 26 Installing the controller on a flat surface on page 136 Maximum ambient temperature reached on page 304 Maximum core temperature reached on page 304

Installing the controller on a flat surface

The controller must never be in a position where it can slip or fall.

Before you begin

Personnel

Number of Workers: 1

Supplies

• 4 x M6-1.0-6h screws, closed end nut inserts



Note: Maximum thread engagement depth: 6 mm



Note: Torque: 7-9 N·m



136



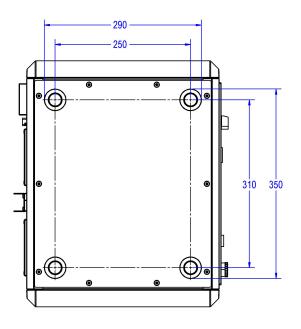


Figure 97: Mounting points of the controller, measured in millimeters

About this task

Verify the technical specifications of the controller to ensure there is maximum airflow around the controller, as well as enough space to hold the controller without putting it in a position in which it can be bumped.

The controller does come with anti-slip feet. Therefore, it is possible that placing it on a suitable flat surface suffices.

Alternatively, the controller can be secured to a flat surface.

Procedure

- 1. Align the foot mounts on the controller with the holes in the stable surface.
- **2.** Place each of the M6 screws from under the surface into the foot mount location on the controller.
- 3. Tighten each screw until the controller cannot move.

Related topics

Considerations before installing the controller on page 134 Controller mounting interface on page 26 Surface mount of controller on page 27

Connecting the arm to the controller

The *arm* receives commands from the *controller* through a cable.





Procedure

- 1. Take the cable that comes out of the base of the arm.
- 2. Connect the end of the cable into the connector marked ARM on the controller.



3. Screw the cable in place.

Installing the teach pendant mount

The *teach pendant* comes with a flat display mounting interface (FDMI) that can be attached to a wall or other vertical surface. When the teach pendant is not in use, store it on the mount.

Before you begin

Personnel

• Number of Workers: 1

Supplies

For the MIS-D installation

- 4 x MIS-D compatible screws (M4 with 0.7 mm thread)
- Washers

For the 90 x 45 mm

• 4 x M8 screws

About this task

The teach pendant mount is compatible with VESA MIS-D, 75, and is compatible with the VESA Flat Display Mounting Interface (FDMI[™]) Standard. It has a 75 x 75 mm screw mounting pattern.

It also has a 90 x 45 mm pattern, which is not FDMI compatible. However, that pattern can be used to anchor the mount with M8 screws. The 90 x 45 mm alternative approach is excellent for such installations as 45 mm extrusion systems.





Figure 98: Teach pendant mount



Figure 99: Specifications of the top view of the teach pendant mount

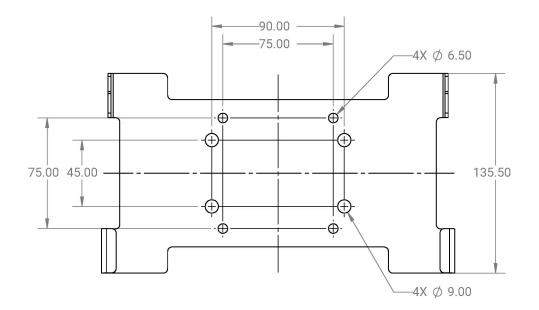


Figure 100: Specification of the front view of the teach pendant mount

Procedure

1. Choose whether you are installing using the FDMI standard or the 90 x 45 mm pattern; this determines which equipment and tools you need for installation.



2. Use the specifications in the figures to secure the teach pendant mount to the surface.

Related topics

Teach pendant overview on page 30

Connecting the teach pendant to the controller

The controller sends and receives commands from Kortex Web App on the teach pendant.

About this task

A cable is attached permanently to the teach pendant.

Procedure

- 1. Take the cable that comes out of the teach pendant.
- 2. Connect the end of the cable into the connector marked TP on the controller.



3. Screw the cable in place.

Connecting power to the controller

The *controller* requires power to power the rest of the robot.

Before you begin

The *AC* power line must be protected with a 15 A circuit breaker, or equivalent overcurrent protective device, at 120 VAC, and with a 7.5 A circuit breaker, or equivalent overcurrent protective device at 240 VAC.

The controller must be switched off.

About this task

The arm must be connected to the controller before the initial start-up of the controller.



Procedure

1. Plug one end the AC cord into the back of the controller.



2. Plug the other end of the *AC* cord into an electric socket.



Connecting a computer to the controller

Kortex Web App may be run on a computer, but it works only if the computer is connected to the *controller*.

Before you begin

You need to have an Ethernet CAT5 cable.

About this task

You can use a computer to program Link 6, particularly when you want to program the robot with minimal downtime.

Procedure

1. Connect one end of the cable to the Gigabit Ethernet port on the front or back of the controller.



2. Connect the other end of the cable to the computer.

Connecting a network to the controller

There are times when you need a permanent set-up in which the *controller* connects directly to a network.

Before you begin

You need to have an Ethernet CAT5 cable.

About this task

You can use a computer to program Link 6, particularly when you want to program the robot with minimal downtime.

Procedure

- 1. Connect one end of the cable to the Ethernet port on the front or the back of the controller.
- 2. Connect the other end of the cable to the network computer.



Initial software setup

Before you can start using Link 6, you have to configure the robot using *Kortex Web App*.

Kortex Web App is a Web-based GUI used for configuring, controlling, and monitoring the robot.

Supported client devices

Kortex Web App runs on the *teach pendant* that is connected to the *controller* with a cable. It also runs on a web browser on the computer that is connected to the controller over a wired Ethernet.

Kortex Web App is a responsive web application. It is designed to adapt itself to various aspect ratios and resolutions so that it can run on multiple platforms.

There are two types of users who use the teach pendant.

- The integrator can use the teach pendant when they configure or program the robot.
- The operator can use the teach pendant to run a validated program, provided they use it within an area defined by the integrator. The area should be outside of the *robot cell*.



Figure 101: Kortex Web App on a teach pendant



= KINDV3	5AFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00 🌲 🚭 🕚 (U) Mon. Stop
✓ Programs > New Program (2762437117)	
Piełdłus Adapter P New Program III X III Biał On Robot Gripper P III ✓ III ✓ Biał On Robot Gripper P III ✓ III ✓	Validate 🗌 📰 🛱 🗄 🖬 🛱
Course Woor Plugins Course Plugins Plugin	Waypoint #1 ・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・・
Robot - +	UPDATE C Index 2 Name Waypoint #2
Reference Control Cont	Reference Frame Base

Figure 102: Kortex Web App in a web browser

Logging in

The first step in using Link 6 is to log into *Kortex Web App*. You can use either a computer or a *teach pendant*.

Before you begin

When you use Kortex Web App in a web browser, make sure the *controller* and the computer are connected with an Ethernet cable so that there is an established network connection.

When you use Kortex Web App in a teach pendant, make sure it is connected to the controller. There is no need to establish a network connection in this case.

Link 6 may still be in its package position. It also is possible that it is in its home position.



Figure 103: Link 6 in its package position

About this task

Kortex Web App is a Web-based *Graphical User Interface (GUI)* used for configuring, controlling, and monitoring the robot.



Procedure

1. Switch on the controller.



The power knob flashes a white light while the controller initializes the software and *firmware*. When the controller is ready to be used, the power knob illuminates a steady white light.

The teach pendant switches on automatically if it is connected to the controller.

Kortex Web App launches automatically. It uses the default IP address 192.168.1.10 if it is connected to an external device using an Ethernet cable.

Kortex Web App launches its login dialog.

KINOVA	
Kortex™ Web App	
Username	
Password	0
MAINTENANCE MODI	Ξ
CONNECT	

2. Enter the user name and password of the admin user.

Username is admin. Password is admin.



1

Important: Change the admin password when this is the first log in.

Important: Usernames and passwords are case sensitive.





3. Tap CONNECT.

The Home page of Kortex Web App launches. The Home page displays the Quick Menu.

M Programs	>	1 Status	>	Monitoring	>
√ Robot	>	Plugins	>	🖉 Tools	>
(X) Variables	>				

Repositioning the arm to use it for the first time

After the *arm* is installed, it probably will not be in an optimal position for starting to use the robot.

About this task

The robot must be on and the *admin user* must be logged on. The robot is in its factory settings, which means there are no programs yet. Use *Kortex Web App* in close proximity to the robot arm to make it easier to reposition the arm for the first time.



Figure 104: Link 6 in its package position

Joint	Packaging pose angle
1	-90°
2	0°
3	-152°
4	0°
5	-62°



Joint	Packaging pose angle
6	0°

Figure 105: Angles of each joint in the Packaging pose

JSON Object Edite	or	
package		
Joint Angles		
-90		$\wedge \mathbf{v}$
Angle0		$\land \checkmark$
Angle -152		$\land \checkmark$
Angle 0		↑ ↓
Angle -62		↑ ↓
O Angle		\uparrow \downarrow
	CANCEL	SAVE

Procedure

- **1.** Press and hold the *wrist enabling device* on the arm.
- **2.** Use joint, or *angular*, Hand Guiding mode to move the robot out of its packaging pose and into a stable starting pose.

Alternative: Press and hold the teach pendant enabling device , and use Jog Angular.

3. Release the wrist enabling device.

The arm is now in the correct position to begin programming.

Kortex Web App layout

Kortex Web App is made of several sections.



				3 4	5 6 7
E KINDVA				SAFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00	B Mon. Stop On
Quick Menu					
✓ Programs	>	🗓 Status	>	Monitoring	>
😤 Robot	>	Plugins	>	Ø Tools	>
(X) Variables	>	8			
Monitored Stop		9		Hand Guilding Angular	Cartesian

Header

- 1 Hamburger to access pages
- 2 Quick Menu to return to the Home page
- 3 SAFETY CHECKSUM
- 4 Notification indicator
- 5 User profile
- 6 Mode indicator
- 7 On power button

Important: Tapping the power button switches the arm on or off.

Footer

- 8 Main information panel
- 9 Robot control panel

Menu pages

From either the Hamburger and a Quick Menu, you can access the different *Kortex Web App* functionalities.

When you first log in to Kortex Web App, you are brought automatically to the Quick Menu page. All of the most frequently accessed pages are there. Tapping on any of the items in the Main information panel brings you to the selected function.



Progra	ams	>	📋 Status	>	Monitoring	>
🜱 Robot		>	Plugins	>	🔯 Tools	>
(X) Variab	les	>				

Figure 106: Home page is also the Quick menu

When you are not on the home page, tap on the Kinova logo to access the **Quick Menu**.

Alternatively, you can tap on the **Hamburger** icon (**E**) to display the full menu. The different functions are organized into logical groups.



3.2.0 <u>Open Source Software</u>

Figure 107: Full menu from the Hamburger icon

The main menu is made of four main options, each of which is subdivided further.





Access all safety-related actions you can take on the robot from the Safety menu.

- Joint Limits: Define the maximum position of each joint from -360° to +360°, as well as the maximum speeds at which the joints move in reduced safety mode and normal safety mode.
- **TCP and Elbow Limits**: Define the maximum translation and rotation speeds, as well as the maximum force and torque that can be used on the *TCP* and the elbow.
- **Protection zones**: Define the zones where the robot is not to enter.
- Safety I/Os: Define the behavior of the equipment connected to the safety I/Os on the controller on the corresponding input and output channels.

Access everything you need to create a program from the **Programming** menu.

- **Variables**: Define variables, along with their scopes, for modifying plugins and creating programs.
- **Programs**: Create, modify, and select programs, using actions defined by plugins and variables in the system.

Access monitoring and status information from the **Diagnostics** menu.

- Status: View the status of the main parts of the robot
 - Safety Functions
 - ° Controller
 - Actuators
 - ° SCU
 - ° Wrist
- **Monitoring**: View the live feedback from every sensor reading and the values derived form them.

Example: The position of the *TCP*.

From the **Systems** menu, you can access information about the system in general, as well as perform general purpose tasks, such as upgrading the system and adding new users.

- **Information**: View information specific to Link 6 as a product, its controller, and its arm.
- Robot: Configure controls for the robot.
- **Tools**: View, modify, and add tools to reflect what is installed on the robot.
- **Plugins**: View, modify. and add *plugins* to use with the robot.
- **Networks**: View and modify the existing network communication system.
- **Remote Access**: Select which external sources can communicate with the robot.
- **Users**: View, modify, and add users who can use the robot. All admin users and operators are listed on this page.



- **Upgrade**: View the current version for Kortex Web App, the *firmware* bundle, and firmware versions. Upgrade the robot to the latest software and firmware updates. Reset the robot to its factory settings.
- **Maintenance**: Export logs of information related to the functionality of the robot, as well as save and load system configurations.

At the bottom of the menu, there are two pieces of information.

- The version of Kortex Web App
- A link to the Open Source Software that are used to build Kortex Web App

Open Source software packages

Link 6 is built using some Open Source software components. The licenses are listed on this **Open Source Software** page.

Access the **Open Source Software** page by tapping **Hamburger > Open Source Software**.





× •	<inova< th=""><th></th></inova<>	
\oslash	Safety	^
Ŷ	Joint Limits	
Ì	TCP & Elbow Limits	3
<i>'</i> //.	Protection Zones	
	Safety I/Os	
~	Programming	~
ଷ୍	Diagnostics	~
鐐	Systems	~
3.2.0	Open Source Se	oftware

Figure 108: Accessing the Open Source Software page



= KINOVa	safety checksum A9 5F 85 C4	🌢 🚯	Mon. Stop
Open Source Software			
3cky/mbusd			~
@formatjs/intl-datetimeformat			~
@formatjs/intl-locale			~
@formatjs/intl-numberformat			~
@formatjs/intl-pluralrules			~
@formatjs/intl-relativetimeformat			~
@material-ui/core			~
@material-ui/icons			~
Contraction of the second seco	لمبلج Hand Guiding	Angular	Jog Cartesian

Figure 109: Open Source Software page

Tap on any of the packages listed to view its corresponding license.

Indicators, user profile, and power

Sometimes, you need a quick way to access notifications, your profile, the current mode of the robot, and a way to power on or off the *arm* of Link 6.

In the same header as the Hamburger and the Kinova logo are four more icons.



Figure 110: Indicators, modes, and arm power status

safety checksum 00 00 00 00

The Safety checksum icon is a unique number that represents the current configuration of several safety elements derived from the *MPU* and the *SCU*.

- SF03 Safety position limits
- SF04 Safety joint speed monitoring reduced and normal speed limits for all joints
- SF-06 Protection zone positions, shape type, dimensions, orientations, and activation status
- · Tool sphere position and dimensions
- Safety TCP orientation speed monitoring normal and reduced speed mode limits
- Safety TCP translation speed monitoring reduced speed mode limits
- Safety elbow translation speed monitoring normal and reduced speed mode limits

The administrator is responsible for writing down the checksum when they are satisfied with the safety configuration. Any change in the value displayed in the Safety checksum icon indicates a change in the safety configuration.

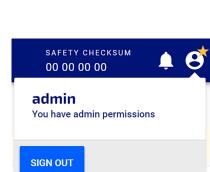
Tap the Notification icon to launch the **Events** page.

The admin user is logged into Kortex Web App.

An operator is logged into Kortex Web App.

Tap the User profile icon to launch the User profile .

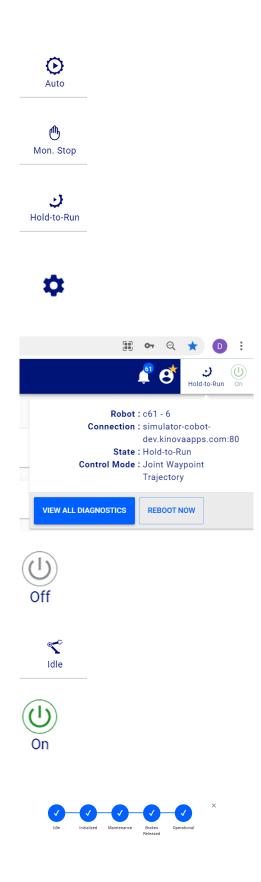
The **User profile** displays the role and permissions of the currently logged-in user. It is from this panel that you can sign out.





6

8



The Robot status icon displays the current mode that Link 6 currently is in. The arm is not operational during the Monitored Stop mode.

- Automatic
- Monitored Stop
- Hold-to-Run
- Maintenance mode

Tap the Robot status icon to launch a summary of the diagnostics of the robot.

Tap VIEW ALL DIAGNOSTICS to view information on the Status page.

Tap **REBOOT NOW** to *reboot* the robot.

The Arm Power Off icon indicates the arm of Link 6 is off. The icon is gray.

Tap to switch the arm of the robot on.

When the arm is switched off, the state of the arm shows that it is idle; the arm is waiting to be used.

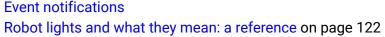
The Arm Power On icon indicates the arm of Link 6 is on. The icon is green. The states above the Robot control panel indicate the arm is operational.

Tap to switch the arm off.

When the arm is switched on, the state of the arm shows that it is on and is operational.

The Robot status icon changes to Monitored Stop.

Related topics Event notifications





User management on page 161

Robot control panel

The Robot control panel is both a status panel when operating the *arm* manually and another form of access to controls of the arm.

The current operating mode is displayed on the left of the panel . Tap it to access the other available operating modes.



Figure 111: Example of the Robot control panel



Figure 112: Example of the Robot control panel in Manual Jog mode

The current mode is a lighter blue than the rest of the Robot control panel.

At the opposite end of the Robot control panel are the manual control modes, as well as the *enabling device* status.



Figure 113: Virtual controls and mode toggles with enabling device off and then on

Tapping any one of these three buttons launches a window with controls. The controls are available only when the enabling device is held in the middle position.



Modes available in Hand Guiding mode



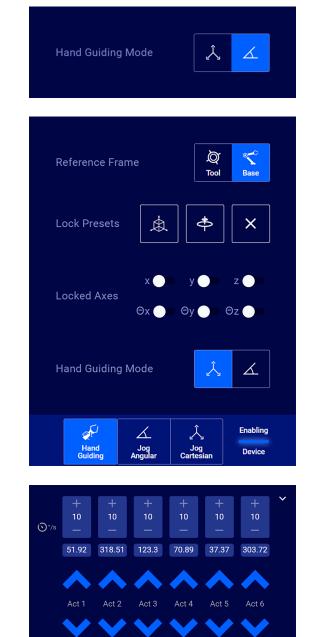


Virtual controls in angular Hand Guiding mode

Virtual controls in Cartesian Hand Guiding mode

Virtual controls in angular Manual Jog mode

- *Tip:* The controls are available only when the enabling device is held in the center position.
- *i* **Tip:** Tap the up arrow (**A**) in the corner to expand the view of the controls.
- *Tip:* Tap the down arrow (☑) in the corner to collapse the view of the controls.



Hand Guiding

Jog

Speed

Jog Cartesia Enabling

Device





Virtual controls in Cartesian Manual Jog mode

- **Tip:** The controls are available only when the enabling device Is held in the center position.
- *Tip:* Tap the up arrow (A) in the corner to expand the view of the controls.
- *i* **Tip:** Tap the down arrow (**X**) in the corner to collapse the view of the controls.



Note: When you tap Hand Guiding in the Robot control panel, the current mode is automatically Monitored Stop.



Note: When you tap Jog Angular or Jog Cartesian in the Robot control panel, the current mode is automatically Manual.

1

Related topics

Additional settings on page 290

System information

Whenever you need to know anything related to the product and the versions associated with it, whether to know whether it is eligible for an upgrade or Support requests specific information from you about the robot, check the **Information** page.

Tap **Systems > Information** to access the **Information** page.



= KINOVa			SAFETY CHECKSUM () CO 00 00 00 () CO Mon. Stop () On
Information			Data was refreshed 17 minutes ago 🤇 🤁
Product	Controller	Arm	
KIN			C61-CAB20-6C000C000000
Model ID			Link 6
Model Year			19
Assembly Plant			В
Degrees of Freedom			6
Monitored Kup			g∳ ∠ Ĵ, Enabling Hand Jog Guiding Angular Cartesian Device

Figure 114: Information page when first launched

Tap on **Controller**, **Product**, or **Arm** to access the associated system information.

Table 70: Information available on each system pane

System part	Associated information
Controller	Serial Number
	Part Number
	Part Number Revision
	Main Processing Unit (MPU)
	MAC Address
	Safety Control Unit (SCU)
	MAC Address
	Bootloader Version
Product	KIN
	Model ID
	Model Year
	Assembly Plant
	Degrees of Freedom



System part	Associated information
Arm	Actuator 1 through Actuator 6
	Bootloader Version
	Device Туре
	MAC Address
	Part Number
	Part Number Revision
	Serial Number
	Actuator Safety MCU1 through Actuator Safety MCU6
	Bootloader Version
	MAC Address

Robot networking and communication

An Ethernet cable connects the controller of Link 6 to the rest of the network. Link 6 can be connected to an IPv4 network.

All local networking and communication configurations are accessed by tapping **Systems** > **Networks**.

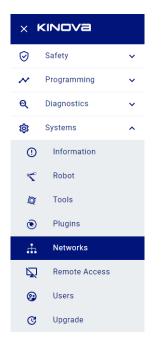


Figure 115: Accessing robot networking and communication configurations



The factory settings of the Controller Ethernet port IPv4 network can be modified in the **Network** page typing in the appropriate values.

- IPv4 Address
- IPv4 Subnet Mask
- IPv4 Default Gateway

≡ KINOV a		🖞 🥙	🔥 Mon. Stop	(U) On
Vetworks				
Ethernet				
IPv4 Address	192.168.1.10			
IPv4 Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0			
IPv4 Default Gateway	0.0.0.0			
	CANCEL APPLY			
Monitored		Hand Guiding Angular C	<u>د</u> ک	nabling Device

When you change the values on the **Network** page, tap **APPLY** for the values to take effect.

Tip: The IPv4 address can be entered in Kortex Web App from a web browser on a computer, instead of the teach pendant, as long as the computer is connected to Link 6 using the Ethernet port.

If accessing the robot through the IPv4 address does not work, verify that the IPv4 address of the Ethernet port on the computer is on a compatible IP address; the address must be 192.168.1.xx, where xx represents a set of two digits.

User management

i

There are two different types of users: *admin* users, and *operators*. Each of these user types are associated with *roles*, which determine what they can and cannot do in an application. It is common to refer to a user by the role they have.

The Administrator role carries more permissions than the Operator role. For instance, an admin is able to create users, but an operator cannot. However, both are able to run a validated program.

When there is a star beside the User profile icon, the user is an admin user. When there is no star, the user is an operator user.



Admin user (2)

Login

Quick Menu , Home page

- Programs
- Status
- Monitoring
- Notifications
- Robot
- Plugins
- Tools
- (x) Variables

Safety

- Joint Limits
- TCP & Elbow Limits
- Protection Zones
- Safety I/O

Configure

Programming

- (x) Variables
- Programs

Create, debug, validate for use, run program

Operator user (🙂)

Login

Quick Menu, Home page

- Programs
- Status
- Monitoring

Safety

- Joint Limits
- TCP & Elbow Limits
- Protection Zones
- Safety I/O

View only

Programming

Programs

Select and run validated program



Admin user (

Diagnostics

- Status: View only
- Monitoring:
 - ° View only.
 - Download snapshot of current data if a USB is inserted in the USB port of the controller.
- Events



Tip: Access the **Events** page by tapping on the Notification bell icon.

- Search for an event.
- Filter for specific events by type and by date range.
- Control what is displayed on the Events page.
- ^o Select an event and delete it.

view only

Systems

- Information: View only
- Robot: Configure
- Networks: Configure
- Plugins: Install and configure
- Tools: Add and configure
- Upgrade: Upgrade software and firmware
- Users: Manage users
- Remote Access: Enable and disable Modbus protocol and Kortex API communication
- Maintenance: Perform basic software maintenance of the robot, such as exporting current data, saving configurations of the robot, and restoring older configurations of the robot

Operator user (🙂)

Diagnostics

- Status: View only
- Monitoring:
 - View only.
 - Download snapshot of current data if a USB is inserted in the USB port of the controller.
- **Events**
 - *i* **Tip:** Access the **Events** page by tapping on the Notification bell icon.
 - Search for an event.
 - Filter for specific events by type and by date range.
 - Control what is displayed on the Events page.
 - Select an event and delete it.

view only

Systems

- Information: View only
- Maintenance: Perform basic software maintenance of the robot, such as exporting current data and saving current configurations of the robot



All user management tasks are accessed by tapping **Systems > Users**.

Related topics

Indicators, user profile, and power on page 153

Adding a user

New operators can be added to the system.

About this task

The *admin* user adds users to the system. Additional admin users cannot be added because there should be only one device, or person, controlling the robot at any given time. All users added to the system are operators.

Procedure

1. Tap Systems > Users.

All users are displayed on the **Users** page.



Important: The first time the **Users** page is accessed, one user is already listed. That is the Administrator user account used to log into Web App.

×	KINOVA		= KINOVA		
\oslash	Safety	~			
~	Programming	~	🚱 Users		
ଷ୍	Diagnostics	~			
礅	Systems	^			
!	Information		Username admin	0 0 0	
۳	Robot				
Ø	Tools				
۲	Plugins				
ф	Networks				
Ŗ	Remote Access				
9	Users				
C	Upgrade				
\$	Maintenance				



2. Tap in the bottom right corner to add more users. The Add User dialog launches.

Username *		
- Password	Retype Pass	word
– First Name –	Last Name	
Notes		

- **3.** Enter information in the fields.
 - Username
 - Password
 - Retype Password
 - First Name
 - Last Name
 - Notes

Important: The username and password are case sensitive.

4. Tap CREATE.

Results

J

A user is added to the list of current users.

 Users			
Username admin	•	Username JSmith	:



Editing a user

When a user is created in the system, it is possible that the user's name was misspelled, a different username must be used, the password must be updated, or the user wants to work in a different language. In all these cases, the admin must edit the user information.

About this task

The *admin* edits users in the system.

Procedure

1. Tap Systems > Users.

All users are displayed on the **Users** page.



- 2. Tap on a user's name.
- 3. Tap the *kebab menu* (1).
- 4. Tap Edit.



The Edit User Profile page is displayed.





5. Update the information.

- Username
- First Name
- Last Name
- Notes

6. Tap UPDATE PASSWORD to change the user's password.

The **Update password** dialog launches.

Update password	
- Old Password	Ø
Password	Ś
- Retype Password	Ø
	CANCEL VPDATE

- 7. Enter the Old Password, new Password, and Retype Password.
- 8. Tap UPDATE.

Results

All edited information is saved automatically.

Deleting a user

Sometimes a user must be removed from the system.

About this task

The *admin* removes users from the system.

Procedure

1. Tap Systems > Users.

All users are displayed on the **Users** page.



2. Tap the kebab menu of the user to be deleted.



Note: Administrator accounts cannot be modified or deleted. The content of the kebab menu is not selectable.

A contextual menu launches, one of the choices being to delete the user.



3. Tap Delete.

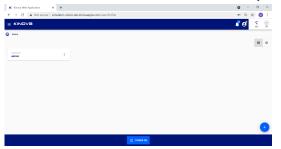
A Delete the user confirmation dialog launches.

Delete the user		
Are you sure you want to delete this user? JSmith		
	CANCEL	✓ DELETE

4. Tap Delete to delete the selected user.

Results

The selected user is deleted from the system.



Elevating permissions

The role of a user may need to change from operator to admin user.

Before you begin

Log in Kortex Web App as an operator.

About this task

An operator can elevate their permissions to the administrator level only when the operator knows the admin password.





Tip: An operator can elevate their permissions only if they know the admin password.

Procedure

1. Tap User Profile 🙂 .

A User profile launches.

safety checksum 00 00 00 00	• •
operator	m
ELEVATE PERMISSIONS	SIGN OUT

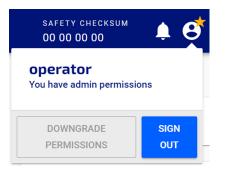
2. Tap ELEVATE PERMISSIONS.

The Elevate Permissions dialog launches.

Elevate Permissions	
Password	٥
	CANCEL CONFIRM

- 3. Enter the admin user password.
- 4. Tap CONFIRM to elevate permissions.

The current user can now do the same tasks as an admin user.





Tip: A quick way to make sure the current user is an admin user or an operator is to look at the **User Profile** icon.

- An administrator user has steady star on the User Profile icon. An administrator user cannot downgrade their permissions.
- An operator with elevated permissions has a flashing star on the **User Profile** icon. An operator with elevated permissions can downgrade their permission level.



• An operator with operator level permissions has no star on the **User Profile**. An operator can elevate their permissions if they know the admin password.

Remote access

You do not have to use the teach pendant to communicate with Link 6. You can access it remotely.

All remote communication configurations are accessed by tapping **Systems > Remote Access**.

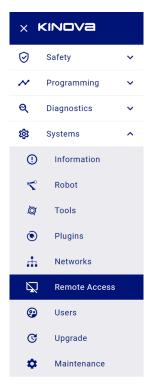


Figure 116: Accessing remote access configurations

A warning is displayed directly on the **Remote Access** page that states that active sessions may close when the communication is enabled or disabled.

The only communication systems that can be enabled or disabled directly with the arm are the Modbus Slave protocol and the Kortex *API*. The enabled state of the protocol and the API are maintained, or persist, so that they are always there after *booting* and *rebooting*.



= KINOV a	SAFETY CHECKSUM 🌲 🥴 🤳 Hold-to-R	un 0
Remote Access		
A Changing these settings may close active sessions		
Modbus Slave	•	•
Kortex API		
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	inabling Device

Figure 117: Remote Access page

Important: When **Kortex API** is enabled, you can use the software interface to program the interactions of your system with Link 6. The correct set of permissions is required to work with the Kortex API.

Upgrading software

There are continuous improvements made to Link 6. Make sure that your operations take advantage of these improvements by upgrading the software driving the robot.

About this task

Only the *admin* can update the software.

All software upgrades are accessed by tapping **Systems > Upgrade**.



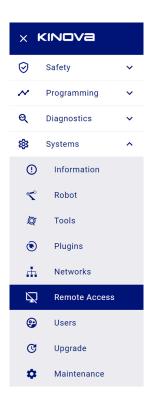


Figure 118: Accessing the software upgrade operation

Procedure

- 1. Tap Off in the On section of Kortex Web App to turn off the arm.
- 2. Tap Systems > Upgrade.

The **Upgrade** page launches. It shows the current version of Kortex Web App, Web Client API, *firmware* bundle, and firmware versions.

= KINOVA			SAFETY CHECKSUM
C Upgrade			
	Software Package		Upload new Software
	Software Package	cobot-simulator-0.0.1	
	Firmware versions		
8	Actuator 1	1.0.0	\leftarrow
	1 Actuator 2	2.0.0	2 Start Robot Upgrade Process
	2 Actuator 3	3.0.0	T
	3 Actuator 4	4.0.0	Updating arm devices:
	Actuator 5	5.0.0	3 Note: Must power on the arm to finalize the arm update
	5 Actuator 6	6.0.0	upuare
-	6 End Effector	7.0.0	
	Web App Version		
	Web App Version	3.1.0-r.53	
	Web Client API Version	3.1.0-r.6	
	FACTORY R	ESET	
Contraction of the second seco			Listed Angle Curristan Drvice

3. Download the new software package from a computer onto a USB.



- 4. Place the USB into the drive on the controller.
- 5. Tap UPLOAD.

A file explorer window launches.

- 6. Navigate to the new software package on the drive, select it, and tap Open.
 - **a.** The *controller* receives its upgrades. Controller upgrades take little time.
 - **b.** Each *actuator* receives their upgrades. This takes more time than the controller. There are six (6) actuators and each actuator receives two different firmware updates.
 - Safety MCU updates
 - Normal operation updates
 - c. The user cannot access Kortex Web App until after the controller reboots.

Results

The robot reboots with the upgraded firmware and software.

Consequences of downgrading from v3.2 to v3.1

It is entirely possible that you may want to work with an older version of Link 6. Reverting to an older version comes with restrictions.

Version 3.2 is not backwards compatible with version 3.1.

Any configurations done using version 3.2 are lost with a downgrade to 3.1. If you do want to downgrade to 3.1, take note of the current configuration of your system, downgrade to 3.1.x, and perform a factory reset. Re-enter the configuration of your system by referring to your notes.

Plugins

In addition to the pre-installed *plugins*, the *administrator* can extend the functionality of the robot through additional plugins to the *Kortex Web App*.

Pre-installed plugins are related directly to Link 6 and cannot be uninstalled.

Arm plugin	The plugin handles all actions needed to control the <i>arm</i> . The configuration and settings of the arm are not visible because they are not modifiable.
Industrial I/O plugin	The plugin handles all general <i>I/O</i> between the <i>controller</i> and on the <i>wrist</i> . That is, the plugin exchanges information using pure electrical



signals through cables connected to some other piece of equipment.

All pre-installed plugins start to run when the controller is switched on. However, they can be stopped so the settings can be modified. All plugins that are running are, by default, active.

Related topics

Plugins on page 323

Getting the plugins for the robot

Upload and installation must be done from a computer and a USB storage device.

Before you begin

All plugins have dependencies on different aspects of the robot.

Make sure to verify all dependencies before installing the plugin.

Table 72: Plugin dependencies and expected issues when dependencies not met

Dependency	What to expect when dependencies are not met
Hardware resources	Installation failure
• RAM	
Storage	
• CPU core	
Video camera stream, if applicable	
• <i>GPU</i> , if applicable	

About this task

The plugin installation file is named <plugin_name_><version>.kp, where <version> is the version of the plugin. Contact Kinova to get the appropriate plugin file if you are unsure which files you need.

A computer or USB device is needed to upload and install the plugin installation file.



Note: Plugins are updated from time to time. Always make sure you have the latest plugin for your installation.



Important: If the plugin is not compatible with the currently running version of Kortex Web App, an error dialog launches.

Procedure

1. Download the plugin installation file <plugin_name_><version>.kp.



- 2. Save the plugin installation file in the root directory of the USB storage device.
- **3.** Eject the USB after the transfer of the plugin installation file is complete.
- **4.** Plug the USB storage device on the *controller*.
- 5. Switch on the teach pendant.
- 6. Enter the administrator credentials.
- 7. Tap CONNECT.
- 8. Tap POWER ON.

The arm is switched on.

What to do next

Install the required plugins from the **Plugins** page in *Kortex Web App*.

Installing plugins

Some *end effectors* and robot systems require special plugins that need to be installed before they can be use as intended. Other plugins may operate in a standalone fashion to add new features to your robot.

Before you begin

The arm must be turned off before plugins are installed.

The plugin must not be installed.

About this task

Plugin files have a . kp extension.

All installed plugins are accessed by tapping **Systems > Plugins**.



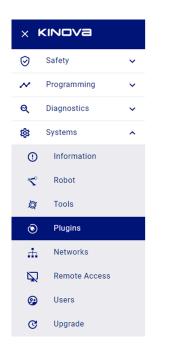


Figure 119: Accessing the plugins

Procedure

1. Tap Systems > Plugins.

The **Plugins** page launches.

= KINOVa				SAFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00	≜ 6 *	℃ Idle	(U) Off
Plugins							
							=
Plugin Arm Plugin	* *	Plugin Industrial I/O Plugin	:				
							+



2. Tap +

A Plugin Installation dialog launches.

Plugin Installation	
Select file for update No file selected SELECT FILE Clear Plugin data :	
	S CANCEL VINSTALL

3. Tap SELECT FILE.

A window launches.

- 4. Browse and select the file with . kp extension.
- 5. Tap Open.

The **Plugin Installation** dialog shows the name of the selected file.

Plugin Installation		
Select file for update test.kp		
SELECT FILE		
Clear Plugin data : 🗹		
	CANCEL	🗸 INSTALL

6. Tap Clear Plugin data.

When you clear the plugin data, you are making sure you have a clean installation of the plugin.

7. Tap INSTALL.

Results

The installed plugin appears on the **Plugins** page and is running.

Any tools associated with the uninstalled plugin are automatically removed from the **Active** and **Inactive (drag & drop)** panes of the **Tools** page.

Related topics

Uninstalling plugins on page 178



Uninstalling plugins

Some *end effectors* and robot systems require special plugins that need to be installed before they can be use as intended. It is recommended to uninstall the existing plugin before installing the new plugin because there may be conflicts in their structures.

Before you begin

The arm must be turned off before plugins are uninstalled.

About this task

All installed plugins are accessed by tapping Systems > Plugins.

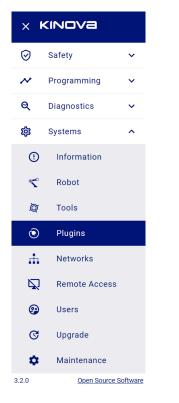


Figure 120: Accessing the plugins



Procedure

1. Tap Systems > Plugins.

The **Plugins** page launches.

= KINOVa				SAFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00	∳ છ ́	℃ Idle	(U) Off
Plugins							
							≣
Plugin Arm Plugin	:	Plugin Industrial I/O Plugin	:				
							+
		() POWER ON					

- Tap the plugin that you plan on upgrading.
 The Configurations page of the plugin launches.
- **3.** Switch off **Activate Plugin**. The plugin stops running.
- 4. Tap Plugins to return to the main Plugins page.
- **5.** Tap : > **Delete**.

Results

The plugin is uninstalled and is not on the **Plugins** page.

Any tools associated with the uninstalled plugin are automatically removed from the **Active** and **Inactive (drag & drop)** panes of the **Tools** page.

Related topics

Installing plugins on page 175

Overview of working with plugins

Tapping a plugin from the **Plugins** page launches the page of that plugin.



Figure 121: Example of a plugin page of a plugin that is stopped





3

- 1 Tap **Plugins** to return to the list of plugins.
- 2 Name of the selected plugin with the name of the namespace associated with the selected plugin in parentheses.
 - Tap **Configurations** to view and modify the current configurations of the selected plugin.
 - **Important:** Tap **Stop** (stop **a**) before you attempt to modify the current configurations.
 - !

I

Important: Tap **Run** (Run) after you modify the configurations. The plugin runs with the latest configuration values.

When there are no modifiable configurations in the plugin, a message is displayed.

This plugin does not expose any configuration.

- 4 Tap **About** to view important information about the selected plugin.
 - Name
 - Version
 - Installation Type
 - Licenses
 - Description
 - Email
- 5 Toggle **Activate Plugin** to deactive plugins that need to be installed but are not being used. When the toggle is white, it is off.

Tap Activate Plugin to activate a deactivated plugin. When the toggle is blue, it is on.

6 The current operating state of the plugin.

Tap **Stop** (Stop **•**) to stop the plugin from running. The button changes to **Run** (Run **•**).

Tap **Run** to restart the plugin after modifying its settings. The button changes to **Stop**.

Configuring tools

All tools need to be configured before they are used.

About this task

All tool configuration tasks are accessed by tapping **Systems > Tools**.



i

Tip: Before you can edit the active tools, the robot must be switched on and it must be in Monitored Stop mode.

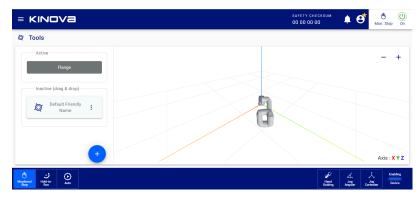
×	<inova< th=""><th></th></inova<>	
${}$	Safety	~
~	Programming	~
ଷ୍	Diagnostics	~
鐐	Systems	^
()	Information	
*	Robot	
Ø	Tools	
۲	Plugins	
÷.	Networks	
\mathbf{Q}	Remote Access	
	Users	
C	Upgrade	

Figure 122: Accessing tool configuration operations

Procedure

1. Tap Systems > Tools.

The Tools page launches.



The tools are listed on the left side in two groupings: **Active** and **Inactive (drag & drop)**. The *flange* is always listed in the **Active** tools list because all tools are attached to it.

The center is a 3D view of the arm that can be moved around to help you visualize the tool reference frame. Tap + or - to zoom in or out. Hold and move the view around to have different viewpoints of the robot.

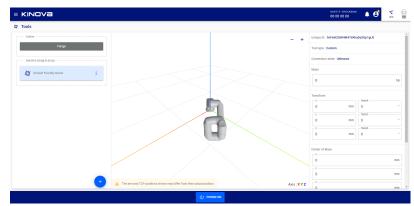


2. Select a tool in the Inactive (drag & drop) pane.



Tip: Kinova accessories and tools supported by plugins that are installed are available in the **Inactive (drag & drop)** pane.

The properties of the selected tool are displayed on the right.



3. Modify the values in the Properties panel.



Note: Configure the tools only when they are still in the **Inactive (drag & drop)** pane.

4. Drag each tool in the order they are assembled onto the flange of the *wrist*.

Adding tools

Custom tools do not come with their own *plugins*. They still can be added to the robot so that the robot can take the tool into consideration when following position commands.

Before you begin

Know the mass, transformation, center of mass, and inertia matrix of your tool.

About this task

The properties of the custom tool affect the *TCP* of the entire robot.



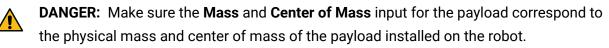
Procedure

1. Tap •.

The Create new custom tool dialog launches.

Create new custo	m too	d		
Name				•
Default Friendly Name				
Mass				
0				kg
Transform				- 1
_ x		- thetaX		
0	mm	0	٠	- 1
_ y		- thetaY		
0	mm	0	٠	- 1
- z		- thetaZ		
0	mm	0	٠	- 1
Center of Mass				
_ x				
0	mm			- 1
_ y				
0	mm			- 1
z				
0	mm			- 1
Inertia Matrix				
- ixx		iyy —		
0	kg/m²	0	kg/m²	
_ ixy		j iyz		
0	kg/m²	0	kg/m²	
_ ixz		izz		
0	kg/m²	0	kg/m²	
				~
		CANCEL	✓ CREATE CUST	
		OANOLL	CREATE COST	om TOOL

- 2. Enter the information about the custom tool.
 - Name
 - Mass
 - Transform: x, y, z in mm
 - Transform: $\theta_{\rm X},~\theta_{\rm Y},~\theta_{\rm Z}\,in\,^\circ$
 - Center of Mass: x, y, z in mm
 - Inertia Matrix: ixx, ixy, ixz, iyy, iyz, izzinkg/m²





3.

If the physical mass and physical center of mass of the payload does not match what is entered in the Create new custom tool form, it could lead to erratic behavior of the robot when it is used in Hand Guiding mode.

Always validate the mass and center of mass that is entered in Create new custom tool against the physical inertial parameters.

Tap CREATE CUSTOM TOOL.

The new tool is added to the list of available tools.

Other actions that can be taken on tools

There are three actions you can take on available custom tools.

= KINOVa	
Ø Tools	
Active	Flange
Available	
MyDualGripper	1 Rename 2 Duplicate
	3 Delete

1 Rename

Enter a new name and press Enter.

The name of the tool changes.





2	Duplicate	The tool is duplicated as "Copy of" followed by the name of the copied tool.				
		= KINOVA				
		Tools				
		Active				
		Flange				
		Available				
		Copy of My Gripper				
		🔯 My Gripper :				
3	Delete	A confirmation dialog launches.				
		Delete custom tool				
		Are you sure you want to delete this custom tool? Copy of My Gripper				
		CANCEL V DELETE				
		Tap Delete and the selected tool is no longer available.				
		= KINOVA				
		C Tools				
		Active				
		Available				
		🔯 My Gripper :				

Configurations for the robot settings

Some of the robot settings in the controller, the arm, and the force torque sensor in the wrist are configurable.

All configurations specific to the robot are accessed by tapping Systems > Robot.



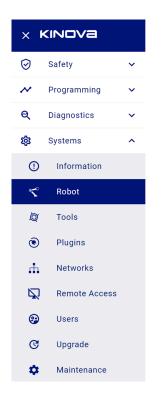


Figure 123: Access the robot settings

Related topics Restoring factory defaults on page 194

Configuring the controller for robot controls

The **Robot Controller** page displays the configurations that can be changed for the controller.

About this task

All controller configurations for the robot must be performed when the robot is in Monitored Stop.

The only changes that can be made to the robot with respect to the controller involve using the settings from the factory, as well as using or overriding the Acknowledge button on the controller.

Access the **Controller** page by tapping **Systems** > **Robot**. The **Controller** page is the default page.



= KINOVa			SAFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00	B Mon. Stop On
🜱 Robot			Data was refr	reshed 10 seconds ago 🛛 C
Controller	م محمد محمد محمد محمد محمد محمد محمد مح	→ Force Torque Sensor		
Restore Factory Settings				RESTORE
Acknowledge Automatic Mode				
Monitored Stop			Hand Guiding Angu	

Procedure

1. Tap **RESTORE** in the **Restore Factory Settings** pane to reinstate factory settings in the *base*.



Remember: When you restore factory settings, all configurations, *plugins*, and programs are deleted.

2. Tap the **Acknowledge Automatic Mode** slider to enable or disable the use the ACK button on the controller to confirm running a program in Automatic mode.



Note: By default, the Acknowledge Automatic Mode is enabled.

Configuring the arm for robot controls

The **Robot Arm** page displays the configurations that can be changed for the arm.

About this task

All *arm* configurations for the robot must be performed when the robot is in Monitored Stop.

The only changes that can be made to the robot with respect to the arm involve its gravity vector, payload, calibration.

Access the **Arm** page by tapping **Systems > Robot > Arm**.



= KINOVa			SAFETY CHECKSUM 🌲 🥙 🕚 ON
ኛ Robot			Data was refreshed 2 minutes ago 🦉
Controller	Arm	Force Torque Sensor	
Gravity Vector			~
Payload			~
Calibration			~
Monitored Hold-to- Stop			Hand Jog Jog Jog Jog Device

Procedure

Configuring the gravity vector of the arm

When the robot is unboxed, the robot is oriented sideways. The *controller* expects the robot to be oriented up with gravity pointing down. After the robot is installed, the values for **Gravity Vector** must be verified, especially when the robot is installed on a wall, ceiling, or other location that is not on a table or floor, because it is not oriented up.

1. Tap **Gravity Vector** to access configurable parameters of the gravity vector of the arm. The **Gravity Vector** pane launches.

= KINOVA			84FETY CHECKSUM 🌲 🥙 👶 00 00 00 00 🗭 🗍 Mon. Sorp	
🔨 Robot			Data was refreshed 2 hours ago	e
Controller	Arm	Force Torque Sensor		
Gravity Vector			^	
Gravity Vector			X V CLEAR 0 m/x ^a 0 m/x ^a	

2. Enter values for x, y, and z in m/s^2 , expressed in the Base reference system.



Important: The gravity vector is not normalized and is not scaled. Make sure to keep the standard acceleration of gravity at 9.81 m/s^2 ; any other value affects the feeling of the robot when operating in Hand Guiding mode.



3. Tap SEND.

A confirmation dialog launches when errors are suspected.



- **4.** Tap **PROCEED** to send the gravity vector values to the controller or tap **CANCEL** to cancel the operation.
- 5. Tap **CLEAR** to erase the values entered that have not been sent.

Configuring the payload of the arm



Important: *Payload* does not refer to the *end effector*. It refers to the mass of the object that the robot is picking.

The mass and its center of the object being picked affect the positioning and speed of the robot.

6. Tap **Payload** to access configurable parameters of the payload attached to the arm. The **Payload** pane launches.

= KINOVa					SAFETY CHE 00 00 00 0	скзим 0	¢ 6	👌 (Mon, Stop
🛠 Robot						Data was re	freshed 6 mi	nutes ago 🛛 C
Controller	Arm	Force Torque Sensor						
Gravity Vector								~
Payload								^
Aass					0	I	g	CLEAR
Asss Center			x 0	m 0	m	m	CLE	
S nhaned						ہو Hand Galding	لم يتور معرف	Å Enabling Jog Nessan Device

- 7. Enter the Mass in kg of the object being picked.
- 8. Tap SEND

A confirmation dialog launches.



9. Tap **PROCEED** to send the mass of the object that is to be picked to the controller or tap **CANCEL** to cancel the values entered.



- **10.** Tap **CLEAR** to erase the values from the page.
- **11.** Enter the Mass Center in meters of the object being picked.
- 12. Tap SEND.
- **13.** Tap **CLEAR** to erase the values from the page.

Configuring the calibration parameters of the arm

Calibrating the arm leads to increased accuracy in the movement. Calibration files contain the date and time of the calibration file, the serial number of the arm, and parametric values. There must be an active calibration file for the robot to operate.

14. Tap **Calibration** to access configurable parameters to calibrate the arm. The **Calibration** pane launches.

= KINOVa		afety checksum 0 00 00 00	Ļ (S Mon.	Stop On
Robot		C	Data was refres	hed 3 minutes a	ago C
Controller	Arm	Force Torque S	Sensor		
Gravity Vector					~
Payload					~
Calibration					^
Status				CALIBR	ATED
Import calibration file				Import	Ģ
Export calibration file				Export	Ģ
Restore neutral calibration				RESTORE	
<u>•</u> •		J.) <u> </u>	↓ Ì	▼ Enabling
Monitored Hold-to- Run Auto		Hand Guidin		Jog Cartesian	Device



15. Look at **Status** for the current calibration status of the arm.

The status of the calibration indicates whether there are issues before you start using the robot.

- Calibrated
- Not Calibrated
- Waiting Arm Power On
- **16.** Tap **Import** from the **Import calibration file** pane to import a calibration file when the controller is replaced.

Calibration files can be imported only when the robot is idling with the arm switched off. The arm is recalibrated with the content of the file only after a reboot of the robot.



Tip: The arm must not be switched on to import a calibration file.

- **17.** Tap **Export** from the **Export calibration file** to export the current calibration file before changing the controller.
- **18.** Tap **RESTORE** in the **Restore neutral calibration** pane.

Neutral calibration implies the arm is not calibrated.



Tip: The arm must not be switched on to restore the calibration.

Configuring collision detection on the arm

19. Tap **Collision Detection** to access configurable parameters for detecting collisions with the arm.

The **Collision Detection** pane launches.

= KINOVA					84.4577 (HEREEDOM 🌲 🥂 📩 🧐 🚧 👘
≪ Robot					Data was releated 24 minutes app
Controller	Am	Force Tarque Sensar			
Gravity Vector					•
Payland					•
Calibration					•
Collision Detection					•
Reduced Speed	TCP Force Me Sin		Mile SIGN	Ebow Force () we pre-	No DR
Normal Speed 🔊	TCP Force		No BIN	Ebow Force @	No. 100

- 20. Tap the Reduced Speed slider to enable or disable reduced speeds in collision detection.
- 21. Drag the TCP Force slider or enter an amount of force to be used as the amount of external force on the TCP that is needed for a collision to be detected when Reduced Speed is enabled.

The range of the force on the TCP is from 50 N to 500 N.



Drag the Elbow Force slider or enter an amount of force to be used as the amount of external force on the elbow that is needed for a collision to be detected when Reduced Speed is enabled.

The range of the force on the elbow is from 50 N to 500 N.

- 23. Tap the Normal Speed slider to enable or disable normal speeds in collision detection.
- 24. Drag the **TCP Force** slider or enter an amount of force to be used as the amount of external force on the TCP that is needed for a collision to be detected when **Normal Speed** is enabled.

The range of the force on the TCP is from 50 N to 500 N.

25. Drag the **Elbow Force** slider or enter an amount of force to be used as the amount of external force on the elbow that is needed for a collision to be detected when **Normal Speed** is enabled.

The range of the force on the elbow is from 50 N to 500 N.

Configuring the force torque

The **Robot Force Torque Sensor** page displays the configurations that can be changed for the force torque sensor in the wrist.

About this task

All configurations for force torque on the robot must be performed when the robot is in Monitored Stop.

Force torque is measured with respect to the base of the robot.

Access the Force Torque Sensor page by tapping Systems > Robot > Force Torque.

= KINDVa	SAFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00	♠ 🕙 🕚 🕕 Mon. Stop On
🔨 Robot		Data was refreshed 1 hour ago C
Controller Arm Force Torque Sensor		
Force torque sensor value	4 1 N 2	N 6 N
The FT Values are expressed in the base reference frame. Torque wrench 7.07 Nm	1 7 Nm 1	Nm 0 Nm
Zero force torque sensor Adds a persistent offset to the FT sensor measurements of external efforts. Configured tools and payload are considered internal efforts, i.e. FT measurement should be zero if tools and payload are attached to the robot flange and properly configured. If these values are not zero, 'zero' function can be used to compensate for the remaining errors.		ZERO
Reset force torque sensor		RESET
Contraction of the second seco	Hand Guiding	



Procedure

1. Look at the force and torque values in the Force torque sensor value pane.

The values are relative to the reference frame at the tool mounting flange of the robot. It displays the current **Force wrench**, measured in N, and **Torque wrench**, measured in N·m, of the robot.

Performing a Zero function

2. Tap ZERO in the Zero force torque sensor pane.

A zero function is necessary when the values listed in **Force wrench** are not 0 N or the values listed in **Torque wrench** are not $0 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ when no external forces are applied. Shock and temperature can cause non-zero values.

A confirmation dialog that recommends two situations for the robot to be in before proceeding with the Zero function.

- No tool or payload should be attached to the robot.
- If a tool or payload is already attached to the robot, make sure the correct values for the mass and center of mass are entered accurately.

Are you sure you want to proceed?						
Warning The Zero function modifies the FT sensor measurements persistently. It is the users responsibility to ensure this is used appropriately. We recommend performing the Zero with no Tool or payload attached. In the case where a tool or payload is present, it is important that the mass and center of mass of these units are precisely configured. Make sure the FT sensor has been free of external forces for a short time before performing the Zero.						
CANCEL V PROCEED						

3. Tap **PROCEED** to zero the force torque sensor or tap **CANCEL** to cancel the Zero operation.

Resetting

4. Tap **RESET** in the **Reset force torque sensor** to restore the default offsets of the force torque sensor.

A confirmation dialog launches with the warning that the force torque sensor is going to be set to its factory settings.



5. Tap **PROCEED** to return to factory settings of the force torque or **CANCEL** to cancel the reset operation.



Restoring factory defaults

If ever you do not like an upgrade, restore the robot to its factory settings.

About this task

Only the admin user can update the software.



CAUTION: When you restore factory defaults, you lose all your configurations, settings, and programs. You also lose all the user profiles.

Procedure

- 1. Tap **Off** in the On section of *Kortex Web App* to turn off the arm.
- 2. Tap Systems > Upgrade.

The Upgrade page launches.

= KINOVa			SAFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00 🗍 🥙 Mon. Stop On
𝔅 Upgrade			
	Software Package		Upload new Software
	Software Package	cobot-simulator-0.0.1	
	Firmware versions		Ť –
	 Actuator 1 	1.0.0	
	 Actuator 2 	2.0.0	2 Start Robot Upgrade Process
	2 Actuator 3	3.0.0	T
	3 Actuator 4	4.0.0	Updating arm devices:
	Actuator 5	5.0.0	3 Note: Must power on the arm to finalize the arm update
	Actuator 6	6.0.0	0
	6 End Effector	7.0.0	
	Web App Version		
	Web App Version	3.1.0-r.53	
	Web Client API Version	3.1.0-r.6	
	FACTORY F	IESET	
Navena Ran Anto			Lington Lington

3. Tap FACTORY RESET.

All settings and configurations revert to the factory settings. All programs, *plugins*, and users, except for the admin user account, are deleted. All safety I/Os revert to their default values. The username and password of the admin user reverts to the admin and admin, respectively.

Related topics

Configurations for the robot settings on page 185

Maintenance mode

Kinova recommends backing up the Link 6 firmware operations and data from the internal processes on a regular basis to make troubleshooting issues easier.

Performing software maintenance is made of two actions.

- Back up the software configuration of your Link 6 system.
- Save log files that contain vital information about the *MPU*, *SCU*, and *MCU*, as well as the database and information when the system suddenly stops working the way it should.



+1 (855) 654-6682 kinovarobotics.com

© 2023 Kinova inc. All rights reserved.

Select **MAINTENANCE MODE** on the login dialog or tap **Systems > Maintenance** to perform maintenance when Link 6 is operating or when the arm is off

		× KINDVa				
	-	$\overline{\top}$	Safety	~		
		~	Programming	~		
		ଷ୍	Diagnostics	~		
KINOVA		鐐	Systems	^		
Kortex™ Web App		()	Information			
Username		۲	Robot			
Password		Ø	Tools			
MAINTENANCE MODE		۲	Plugins			
CONNECT		ф	Networks			
		Ŗ	Remote Access			
Figure 124: Login dialog		?	Users			
		C	Upgrade			
		\$	Maintenance			

Figure 125: Accessing maintenance tasks



= KINOVA	SAFETY CHECH OO OO OO OO		Ļ	6	≪ Idle	(U) Off
Maintenance						
Logs						^
System					EXPOR	г
Configuration						^
System		Sł	VE		LOAD	

Figure 126: Maintenance page

The header of the **Maintenance** page has a slightly different look when it is accessed from the login dialog with **MAINTENANCE MODE** selected. There is no **Hamburger**, no **Quick Menu**, and no SAFETY CHECKSUM. The header has only the Kinova logo, User profile icon, and Mode indicator.

The footer of the **Maintenance** also has a slightly different look when it is accessed from the login dialog with **MAINTENANCE MODE** selected. The Robot control panel is not present.

KINOVA	8	≡ KINDVa	SAFETY CHECKSUM OO OO OO OO	≜ 6 *	℃ Idle	Off
Figure 127: Kortex Web App header in	Figure 128: Regular	Kortex Web Ap	p heade	r		
Maintenance mode						

The **Maintenance** page has functionality differences that depend whether you are an *administrator* or an *operator*. The difference is that the administrator is the only user who can **LOAD** different configurations.



KINOVA	6 *
Maintenance 4	
Logs	^
System	EXPORT
Configuration	^
System	SAVE

Figure 129: Maintenance page when log in with Maintenance Mode

1	The Quick Menu keeps the user on the Maintenance page.
2	The User profile icon is available so that you can log out.
3	The Mode indicator shows the user is in Maintenance mode.
4	The text indicates the name of the page.

The Maintenance page is divided into two panes.

- Logs
- Configuration

Logs

Collecting logs on a regular basis helps to troubleshoot issues with the Kinova support team.

Log files are . ZIP files that contain vital information about the robot. The log files are saved automatically with the file name $logs_[YYYY]_[MM]_[DD]_-_[hh]_[mm]_[ss]Z.zip.$

үүүү	four-digit year
	Example: 2023
ММ	month, from 1 to 12
DD	day, from 1 to 31
hh	hour of the day, from 00 to 23
mm	minutes, from 00 to 59



SS	seconds, from 00 to 59
Z	timestamp is within the UTC time zone
	indicator

Log files do not exceed 2 GB. The exported log include logs from the current system *boot* and, if there is still space, it includes logs from up to the three previous system starts.

The information comes from the *MPU*, *SCU*, and *MCU*. The log also includes information about resource usage, the total amount of time the robot has been operating, memory statistics, version of the *SWU* that is currently installed, system and software interrupts, network adapter statistics, disk space statistics, mount points of the system, a snapshot of the database, a snapshot of the dump files generated by the controller.

All log files are password protected.

When a request to export the logs is made, no other request to export can be performed until the previous export is completed.

Exporting logs

The Kinova support team may ask you to export logs to help troubleshoot an issue while using Link 6.

Before you begin

Make sure you have a *USB* connected to the *controller* when you are exporting logs from the teach pendant. When you are using a computer instead, the log file exports to a location on your computer.

About this task

Log files are protected with passwords.

Procedure

- 1. Access the Maintenance page by performing one of two actions.
 - Log into Kortex Web App in Maintenance mode.
 - Tap Systems > Maintenance.
- 2. Tap Logs.

The Logs pane expands.

3. Tap EXPORT.

A file with all the system information is saved automatically to the USB.



Generated events

Events are generated whenever the system encounters an issue with an operation.

Each event is structured with the same format.

Event heading	Description
Issue	What generated the event
Title	The title given to the issue
Severity	One of four levels of severity
	• CRITICAL
	• ERROR
	• INFO
	• WARNING
Timestamp	The time when the event is generated
Code	The error code associated with what generated the event
Explanation	An explanation of the problem if there is one
Suggestion	Zero or more suggestions on how to proceed

Configuration files

Backup configuration files protect you by saving the amount of time needed to return to known working configurations of a system that may have been altered for a minor change in a previous task.

Configuration files explicitly list information about how the robot is set up.

Table 74: Information saved in configuration files

Configurations	
Safety functions and their limits	Safety I/Os
Protection zones	State of acknowledge automatic mode
Gravity vector	Payload
Remote access	Collision detection
Energy limitations	Programs (names, properties, actions)



Persistent variables	Users and their encrypted passwords
Tool configurations	Plugin configurations
Plugin binary files	Plugin docker volumes
Other information	
Date and time of the backup file	Factory KIN
Serial number of the controller	Serial number of the arm
	<i>i</i> Tip: The arm must be switched on to have its serial number saved.
Version of the SWU	List of all plugins that are installed
Version of each plugin that is installed	Checksum

Configuration files are .ZIP files that contain vital information about the robot. The configuration files are saved automatically with the file name Link_Configuration_[XXXXX]_[YYYY]_[MM]_[DD][Thh]_[mm]_[ss][Z]<_#>.zip.

XXXXX	Controller serial number
ΥΥΥΥ	Four-digit year the file is created
	Example: 2023
ММ	Month the file is created, from 1 to 12
DD	Day the file is created, from 1 to 31
Thh	Hour the file is created, from 00 to 23
mm	Minutes the file is created, from 00 to 59
SS	Seconds the file is created, from 00 to 59
Z	Timestamp is within the UTC time zone indicator
_#	Optional sequential number added when the name of the configuration backup file matches another configuration file that already exists on the USB
	Examples:
	Link_Configuration_XXXXX_YYYY- MM-DDThh-mm-ssZ.zip,



Link_Configuration_XXXXX_YYYY-MM-DDThh-mm-ssZ_1.zip, Link_Configuration_XXXXX_YYYY-MM-DDThh-mm-ssZ_2.zip

Backing up the current configuration and setup

When you have determined the best configuration needed for Link 6 to operate a task, save the configuration.

Before you begin

Make sure to connect a USB to the controller before backing up your configuration.

About this task

Operators and Administrators can create the backup configuration files.



Remember: Only one backup configuration file can be created at a time.

Procedure

- 1. Access the Maintenance page by performing one of two actions.
 - Log into Kortex Web App in Maintenance mode.
 - Tap Systems > Maintenance.
- 2. Tap Configuration.

The **Configuration** expands.

3. Tap SAVE.

Option	Description
To external device	File saves automatically to the device
To teach pendant	File saves to the user-selected destination on the USB on the controller.

Common errors when backing up configuration files

As with all things software, there may be times when error messages are displayed when backing up configuration files. When there is an error, the configuration files are not saved.



Issue

There is a request from the teach pendant to save a configuration file, but there is no *USB* in the *controller*.

There is a *Universal Serial Bus (USB)* inserted in the port on the controller, but the USB has less than 2 GB of space left on it.

Error message

No USB storage device detected on the controller Front Panel USB port.

Not enough space in "<pathname>" to save the configuration backup file.

Ż

Note: <pathname> is the path where the backup configuration file is to be saved.

Issue:	
Error code	9000
Severity	Error
Title	Logs Export Error
Explanation	The specified USB storage device is not mounted.
Suggestion	Try the following actions to resolve the issue:
	a. Make sure the USB storage device is correctly plugged in the controller.
	b. Unplug/plug the USB storage device.
	c. Reboot the system.
	d. Contact Kinova Support.
Issue: The USB has less	than 2 GB of free space available for the log file.
Error code	9001
Severity	Error
Title	Logs Export Error
Explanation	The specified USB storage device has insufficient space to save the logs. The USB storage device needs at least 2 GB of available space.
Suggestion	Try the following actions to resolve the issue:
	a. Remove USB storage device and free space.
	b. Use a USB storage device with sufficient available space.

202

issue. A log is in the process of being exported and there is another request to export a log.	
Error code	9004
Severity	Error
Title	Logs Export Error
Explanation	A request to export logs is already being processed. A single request can be processed at a time.
Suggestion	Try the following actions to resolve the issue: a. Retry later.
	b. Reboot the system.

Issue: A log is in the process of being exported and there is another request to export a log.

Loading configuration files

Load configuration files when you need to recover from a change or when you want to use a specific configuration for a specific task.

About this task

For safety reasons, only the *administrator* can load configuration files; the correct file must be restored to the robot given the tasks the robot needs to perform.



Note: Only one backup configuration file can be restored at a time.



Important: The arm must be switched off.

Procedure

- 1. Access the Maintenance page by performing one of two actions.
 - · Log into Kortex Web App in Maintenance mode.
 - Tap Systems > Maintenance.
- 2. Tap Configuration.

The Configuration expands.

3. Tap LOAD.

The File Upload dialog launches with the message The system will automatically reboot at the end of the configuration restoration.



203

4. Select the configuration file to restore.

Option	Description
From external device	Tap SELECT FILE to select the configuration file from the device.
From teach pendant	Select the file from the list on the File Upload dialog.

Results

Success: The system reboots. The login dialog displays the message The configuration was restored successfully.

Partial success: The system reboots. The login dialog displays a list of parameters and plugins that could not be restored after the message The configuration was partially restored. The following parameters/plugins were not restored:

Failure: The system cancels the restoring of a configuration file when the current configurations of the network, force torque sensor offset, and arm calibration cannot be maintained. All the parameters that caused the cancellation are listed on Kortex Web App.

Collision detection

Link 6 has a feature in which collisions between the *arm*, and at least one object or person, is detected. When a collision is detected, the robot transitions to Monitored Stop.

When the *arm* is switched off or the robot is in Monitored Stop, configure thresholds for the amount of force detected before stopping the robot. Collision detection is triggered when the force values exceed the thresholds. After the fault is cleared, the robot resumes operation from where it was during its program.



Important: Although the thresholds triggers a fault, the thresholds do not prevent the robot from applying more force than the defined threshold.

Small thresholds decrease the amount of force that needs to be felt for a collision to be detected. Large thresholds increases the amount of force that needs to be felt for a collision to be detected.

Access the Arm by tapping Systems > Robot > Arm.



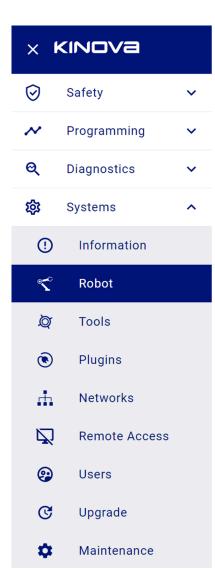


Figure 130: Accessing the Robot page

= KINOVa			SAFETY CHECKSUI 00 00 00 00	" 🌲 🤅	Mon. §	Stop On
Controller	Arm	Force Torque Sensor				
Gravity Vector						~
Payload						~
Calibration						~
Collision Detection						~
Energy Limitation						~
Monitored Stop				And Jog Ang Angular	, Jog Cartesian	Enabling Device

Figure 131: The Arm page



Tap **Collision Detection** to launch the **Collision Detection** pane.

Collision Detection								
Reduced Speed								
TCP Force Threshold Min 120N	Max 500N	180	Ν	Elbow Force Threshold	Min 120N	Max 500N	180	Ν
Normal Speed								
TCP Force Threshold Min 120N	Max 500N	180	Ν	Elbow Force Threshold	Min 120N	Max 500N	180	Ν

Figure 132: Collision Detection pane on the Robot Arm page

Configure thresholds for collision detection in both reduced and normal speeds.

Configuration	Description
Reduced Speed	Tap to switch between activating and deactivating collision detection at reduced speeds.
	Default setting: on
TCP Force Threshold	Use the slider or enter the threshold value in the text box.
	Range: 120 N to 500 N
	Default setting: 180 N
Elbow Force Threshold	Use the slider or enter the threshold value in the text box.
	Range: 120 N to 500 N
	Default setting: 180 N
Normal Speed	Tap to switch between activating and deactivating collision detection at normal speeds.
	Default setting: off
TCP Force Threshold	Use the slider or enter the threshold value in the text box.
	Range: 120 N to 500 N
	Default setting: 180 N

Table 75: Parameters to configure collision detection



Configuration	Description
Elbow Force Threshold	Use the slider or enter the threshold value in the text box.
	Range: 120 N to 500 N
	Default setting: 180 N

Energy limitation

When the energy that can be used for the TCP and the elbow is limited, the speed that the robot travels along the trajectory is controlled.

Kinetic energy of the TCP and the elbow is monitored at all times. It is defined by the equation.

kinetic energy = $\frac{1}{2} * m^* v v^2$

Small limits of energy means the robot travels slower along a trajectory. Large limits of energy means the robot travels faster along a trajectory.

When the *arm* is switched off or the robot is in Monitored Stop, configure the limits of energy that can be used to control the maximum speed of the *TCP* or *elbow* in real time.

Access the **Arm** by tapping **Systems** > **Robot** > **Arm**.



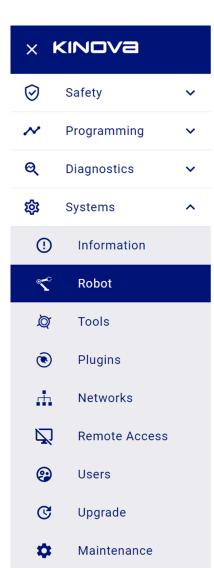


Figure 133: Accessing the Robot page

= KINDVa			SAFETY CHECKSU 00 00 00 00	≝ 🌲 🤇	Mon. :	
Controller	Arm	Force Torque Sensor				
Gravity Vector						~
Payload						~
Calibration						~
Collision Detection						~
Energy Limitation						~
Monitored Stop				€ ∠ and Jog iding Angular	, Ĵog Cartesian	Enabling Device

Figure 134: The Arm page



Tap **Energy Limitation** to launch the **Energy Limitation** pane.

Energy Limit	tation														
Reduced Spe	ed 🛑														
TCP Energy Limit	Min 0.005J	0.05	0.5	5	Max 50J	0.1	J	Elbow Energy Limit	Min 0.005J	0.05	0.5	5	Max 50J	0.1	J
Normal Spee	ed 🕖														
TCP Energy Limit	Min 0.005J	0.05	0.5	5	Max 50J	25	J	Elbow Energy Limit	Min 0.005J	0.05	0.5	5	Max 50J	25	J

Figure 135: Energy Limitation pane on the Robot Arm page

Configure the energy limits for both reduced and normal speeds.

Configuration	Description
Reduced Speed	Tap to switch between activating and deactivating collision detection at reduced speeds.
	Default setting: on
TCP Energy Limit	Use the slider or enter the limit in the text box.
	Range: 0.005 to 50 J
	Default setting: 0.1 N
Elbow Energy Limit	Use the slider or enter the limit in the text box.
	Range: 0.005 to 50 J
	Default setting: 0.1 J
Normal Speed	Tap to switch between activating and deactivating collision detection at normal speeds.
	Default setting: off
TCP Energy Limit	Use the slider or enter the threshold value in the text box.
	Range: 0.005 to 50 J
	Default setting: 25 N

Table 76: Parameters to configure collision detection



Configuration	Description
Elbow Energy Limit	Use the slider or enter the threshold value in the text box.
	Range: 0.005 to 50 J
	Default setting: 25 N

Contact force reduction

It is important to minimize the amount of force used whenever two objects make contact with each other, whether that is between the robot and another inanimate object, or between the robot and a human.

To achieve a minimal amount of force in case of contact, configure several collision detection aspects of the robot and configure the amount of kinetic energy of the *arm* relative to other parts of the robot.

To reduce the total amount of force that is felt at the time of the robot coming into contact with another object you must reduce the thresholds of the amount of force that is felt during collision detection at the *TCP* and at the *elbow*, as well as the amount of kinetic energy that the arm can accumulate.

Expect higher collision forces under specific conditions; the performance of contact force reduction changes over the workspace of the robot.

- Higher collision forces can be expected because of the physical properties of the manipulator.
- Higher collision forces can be expected when there is a collision with an arm that is nearly fully extended in the radial direction because it takes longer to detect this type of collision. Use protection zones and limit the range of the joints to avoid motion of the TCP in areas where the arm is nearly fully extended.
- Reduced performance can be expected when the *end effector*, or tool, moves closer to the base.

A collision that is detected can be a false positive.

- The posture of the arm is close to a singularity.
- A payload is added and it is not configured correctly.
- · The gravity vector is not defined correctly.
- Force threshold configuration values are smaller than the configuration values used in factory setting in Reduced speed mode.
- Force threshold configuration values are reduced, but the energy limits are not reduced.
- Energy limitation functionality is disabled.



• High acceleration constraints in waypoints.

There are many other ways for a false positive collision detection to occur.



Tip: Have the robot pick up objects as close as possible to the object's center of mass to avoid in-hand movement of the object when it is lifted.

Visual programming

To create programs for your Link 6, use the intuitive and easy-to-use *GUI*, Kortex Web App, and its tile-based, code-free visual programming interface.

By using the tiles, you can teach the robot its tasks, manipulate variables, and interact with external devices.

The result is accurate trajectories with reduced downtime for the robot.

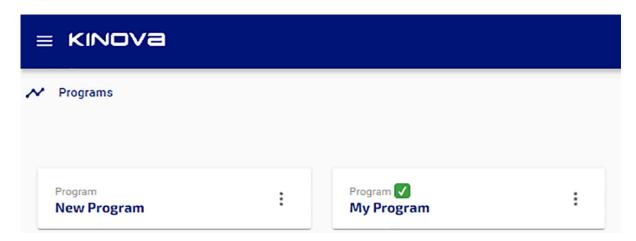


Figure 136: Programs page after programs are created

Overview of the Program page

The **Program** page is where programs are created and debugged.

Tap **Programming** > **Program** to access the visual programming interface.



= KINDVa	SAFETY CHE 00 00 00 0			n. Stop On	
1 2 Program (2039331) 3 4 5 Image: Spectrum Program Image: Spectrum Program	Va	6 (7	8 9)
	Action Name	esults To Variable ——	? (x)	A	
Plugins	Waypoints Constraints Custom F	Frame (Optional)		. 1	
13 Robot • - +	Waypoints Type ─? Cartesian ▼ Use optimal ble	ending			
	Go-To Options Custom Range Play All Waypoints V				
	Waypoints				
Monitored Boop Run Auto	17	Hand Guiding Angular	∫_ Jog Cartesian	Enabling Device	

Figure 137: Parts of the Program page

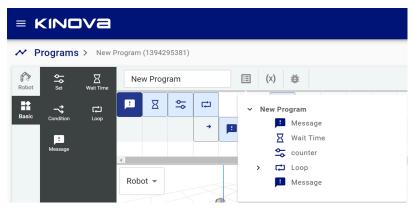
1 Tap to access the **Action** menu.

1

2 Enter a meaningful name for the program.

Tip: Program names can have a maximum of 80 characters.

3 Tap **Tree layout** to view the tiles of the program in tree layout.



- 4 Tap **Variable Manager (X)** to launch the **Variable Manager** page and define variables within the scope of the program, as well as within the scope of persistent variables.
- 5 Tap **Debugger** to select the debugger tool and gather information about the program and its events while it runs. Tap **Debugger** to exit the debugger.



Tip: The **Debugger** button acts as a toggle button. When it is a dark blue, it is on. When it is gray, it is off.

6 Tap **Validate** to release the program to the operator.



7 Tap one of the two **Layout** buttons.

is the default layout where then entire **Sequence editor** is to the right of the **Sequence editor**.

has the Sequence editor across the top half of the Program page.

- 8 Tap **Delete** to delete the currently selected tile.
- ⁹ Tap the *kebab menu* (‡) to access additional tasks that can be performed on the program in the **Sequence editor**. The additional tasks are **Duplicate**, **Delete**, and **DeleteExport JSON**.
- 10 Drag available **Tiles** from the Action into the **Sequence editor** to create a program.
- 11 **Sequence editor** is a drag-and-drop timeline editor of tiles that are performed by the program when it runs.
- 12 Tap on any tile in the program to populate the **Tile configuration** with the fields to create the correct parameters for the tile.
- 13 Select the visualization object.



Note: Currently, the only visualization object that is available is the robot.

- 14 The **Visualization** pane displays the robot in its current position.
- 15 Zoom out in the **Visualization** pane.
- 16 Zoom in the **Visualization** pane.
- 17 Use the icons in the Robot control panel to change modes of operation and to manipulate the playing of a program.

When *Kortex Web App* is operating in Hold-to-Run mode and in Automatic mode, the Robot control panel displays two more parts.

- Program play area
- Program speed control



Figure 138: The parts of the Robot control panel

Program play area

- 1 Tap 🕑 to play the program.
- 2 Tap to stop the program.



Program speed control

³ Tap ... to run the program at normal speed.



Important: It is recommended to run at reduced speed at least once before running at normal speeds when you are operating in Hold-to-Run; injury is possible.

4 Tap \bigcirc to run the program at reduced speed.



Important: It is recommended to run at the reduced speed when you are operating in Hold-to-Run.

- 5 The current translation speed set for the *TCP*.
- 6 Slide the **TCP Translation Speed Limit** slider gradually to scale the speed of your program from the Reduced speed values to the maximum speed.



Note: The **TCP Translation Speed Limit** slider is not available in Reduced speed in Hold-to-Run mode.

Variables

Define variables for the all programs and for specific *plugins* with a global *namespace*. Variables in the program affect how the robot functions.

To access the Variables page, tap Programming > Variables.

= KINOVa				SAFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00	Bon. Stop
(X) Variables					3 4
2 Name	5 Type	6 Schema	7 Unit	8 Value	Q = 9 Actions
> 🖨 home	Object 👻	Default - Joint Angles 👻	N/A	Value {}	/ 1
> 🖨 package	Object 👻	Default - Joint Angles 👻	N/A	Value {}	10
> 🖨 zero	Object 👻	Default - Joint Angles 👻	N/A	Value {}	
Monitored Stop				Hand Jog Guilding Angula	ir Cartesian Enabling

Figure 139: The Variables page



1 **Namespace** helps define the scope of the variable. Variables defined from this page are defined for all programs.

There are default namespaces.

- **globals** are global variables that are global for all programs. They include the pre-made global variables *home*, *package*, and *zero*.
- **arm_plugin** are global variables that are global for all programs and are directly related to the arm.
- **industrial_io** are global variables that are global for all programs and are directly related to the industrial I/Os of the robot.

In addition to the default namespaces, each plugin that is installed on Link 6 has their namespace available in the same list.

- 2 Name of the variable that is defined in the currently selected namespace.
- 3 Tap to search variable names, types, or schemas. The result is displayed on the page. For example, search *package* results in the page displaying all global variables named **package** if it exists as a global variable in the currently selected global namespace.

= KINOVa				SAFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00	😢 🕚 🕕
(X) Variables					
Namespace globals -					
Q package		×			Q =
Name	Туре	Schema	Unit	Value	Actions
> 😑 package	Object 👻	Default - Joint Angles 👻	N/A	Value {}	× 11
Monitored Step				Hand Guiding Angular	Jog Cartesian Device

Figure 140: Result of a search for variable package in global namespace



4 Tap the filter icon (=) to filter the list of variables by Type and by Schema on the **Variables** page.

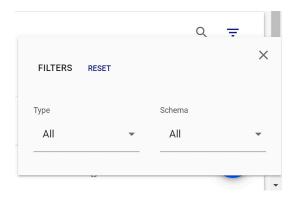


Figure 141: Filter panel

Select a filter type from the **Type** menu.

- All: Boolean, Number, Object, and String
- Boolean: True, False
- Number: Integer, float
- Object: Complex structure
- String: Text

Select a Schema type from the **Schema** menu list when the **Type** is **Object**. The menu lists all schemas that are available.

- 5 Define the type of the user-defined variable by selecting a type from the **Type** menu.
 - String: Text
 - Boolean: True, False
 - Number: Integer, float
 - Object: Complex structure



Tip: You must create a variable to define a type.



- 6 Define the schema of the user-defined variable of type **Object** by selecting a schema from the **Schema** menu.
 - Unspecified: custom structure
 - Default Pose: Cartesian transformation
 - Default Joint Angles: List of angles, one for each joint
 - Default Payload
 - Arm Plugin Matrix Output: List of poses
 - Arm Plugin Waypoints Output: Cartesian and angular position of the waypoint
 - Industrial I/O Plugin Read Input Output: Read input and its corresponding defined output



Remember: There are four types of read input.

- Controller digital: **DI_0** to **DI_7**
- Controller analog: AIO_0 to AIO_3
- Wrist digital: WRIST_DIGITAL_IO1 to WRIST_DIGITAL_IO8
- Wrist analog: WRIST_AOI_1 and WRIST_AOI_2

Note: Read Input Output is used in conjunction with the Industrial I/O plugin.



Tip: You must create a variable to define a type.

Each plugin that is installed has its own set of schemas that you can use for new variables.

- 7 Define the value associated with the variable. Tap the {} icon to invoke the **JSON Object Editor** dialog and change the key-pair values as necessary.
- 8 When the modifiable global variable is of type **Number**, select the unit to be associated with the variable.

 unspecified 	• mm/s ²	• mA
• S	• °/s	• V
• mm	• °/s ²	• °C
• kg	• N	• N·m
• mm/s	• •	

Note: Units are used in context of selecting a number to validate its compatibility with the selected field.



- 9 There are at most two actions that can be taken for each modifiable global namespace variable.
 - Edit (🖍)
 - Delete (

Tap the edit icon (\checkmark) to modify the name of the user-defined global variable.



Note: The user-defined global variables that come with Link 6 cannot be edited.

Tap the delete icon (\blacksquare) to delete the user-defined global variable.



Note: The global variables that come with Link 6 cannot be deleted.

Delete		
globals/new_variable_1 Are you sure you want to delete this variable?		
	CANCEL	V DELETE

Figure 142: Delete user-defined global variable confirmation dialog

Important: Care must be taken when deleting a variable that is global to all programs. Always make sure there are no programs using the global variable before deleting it.

10 Tap to create a variable in the currently selected namespace.

Global variables created on the **Variables** page are accessible in the **Persistent Variables** pane of the **Variable Manager** page, as well as on the **Persistent Variables** pane of the **Select Variable** page of the currently selected program.

Related topics

Variable Management page on page 224 Industrial I/O Plugin on page 324

Examples of JSON statements

JavaScript Object Notation (JSON) is a key-value format for representing structured data. It is text-based, which makes it readable. There are a few things to know about its syntax.

Defining strings

Use double quotation marks around strings.



Examples:

```
{"name":"John"}
{"age":30}
{"sale":true}

meaningful_variable_name = {
    "employee":{"name":"John", "age":30, "city":"Montreal"}
    }
```

Access the value John by writing \${meaningful_variable_name.employee.name}

Define a variable named var as an array of values.

```
{"n":[0,1,2,3,4,5]}
```

The result of ${var.n[0]}$ is 0 and of ${var.n[3]}$ is 3.

Defining iterators

When you define a variable as an iterator, it must be defined as type Number. The first index is always 0. ${\sigma n[\$]}$ outputs the value of each iteration over the array.

Adding a variable global to all programs from the Variables page

Variables can be created either for all programs a robot uses or for only a specific program. Variables created for all programs are made from the **Variables** page.

About this task

Variables that belong to the global namespace are accessible as **Persistent Variables** in the **Select Variable** and **Variable Manager** pages. Variables defined here are available to all programs.

Procedure

1. Tap Programming > Variables.

The Variables page launches.

2. Select the appropriate *namespace* for the variable that is about to be created.



3. Tap •.

The Create Variable dialog launches.

Add a new variable				
Name	new_variable_2			
	CANCEL	✓ SAVE		

4. Enter a meaningful name for the global variable.

Underscores are allowed. Spaces and dashes are not allowed in the name.

5. Tap SAVE.

The new variable is displayed on the **Variables** page. The variable can also be seen on the **Select Variable** and **Variable Manager** pages.

6. Select one **Type** for the variable.

Option	Description		
String	A word, phrase, or sentence		
Boolean	False or True		
Number	Integer or floating point number		
Object	A Schema		
	• Unspecified		
	• Default - Pose		
	Default - Joint Angles		
	Default - Payload		
	Arm Plugin - Matrix - Output		
	Arm Plugin - Waypoints - Output		
	 Industrial I/O Plugin - Read Input - Output 		
	Note: The schemas that are listed are the default schemas. When additional plugins are installed, their associated schema are available from the Object menu.		



7. (Only when the variable is of **Type Number**. Enter a number in the **Value** box and associate a **Unit** of measurement from the menu.



Important: When you leave the **Unit** as **unspecified**, the variable has no unit associated with it.

- **8.** (Only when the variable is of **Type Object**.) Tap the **Schema** for the type of object that variable represents.
- **9.** (Only when the variable is of **Type Object**.) Tap the **Value** icon ({}) next and enter the values in the **JSON Object Editor** and tap **SAVE**.

The information entered can then be available in entities of various tiles.

JSON Object Edit	or	
new_variable_0 USON Object Editor ("angles":[0,0,0,0,0,0]}		
	CANCEL	✓ SAVE

Figure 143: Editor for object type Unspecified

new_variable	2_0
ose	
- x	
0	mm
Y	
0	mm
Z	
0	mm
Theta X	
0	o
Theta Y	
0	o
Theta Z	
0	0

Figure 144: Editor for object type Default - Pose



JSON Object E	ditor	
new_variable_(b	Î
oint Angles		
Angle0	۰	↑ ↓
Angle0	0	↑ ↓
Angle0	۰	↑ ↓
Angle0	0	↑ ↓
Angle	٥	↑↓
Angle	٥	↑ ↓
0		



Figure 146: Editor object type Default -Payload

Figure 145: Editor for object type Default -Joint Angles

new_variable_0 Generated Pose List		JSON Object Editor	
Generated Pose List	Generated Pose List	new_variable_0	
	+	Generated Pose List	

Figure 147: Editor object type Arm Plugin -Matrix - Output

JSON Object	t Editor	
new_variable	⊵_0	
_ x		
0	mm	
- Y		
0	mm	
-		
2 0	mm	
-		
Theta X	0	
0		
- Theta Y		
0	۰	
- Theta Z		
0	0	
Angles		
0	۰	↑ ↓
0	۰	$\land \lor$
0	۰	$\wedge \downarrow$
0	0	^ ↓
	CANCEL	SAVE
	W GARGEE	GAVE

Figure 148: Editor object typeArm Plugin -Waypoints - Output when first invoked







Figure 149: Editor object typeIndustrial I/O Plugin - Read Input - Output

Variable Management page

Variables in the program, either as specific to a program or as global to all programs, affect how the robot functions.

To access the Variable Manager page, select a program from the Programs page and tap the

Variable Manager (X).

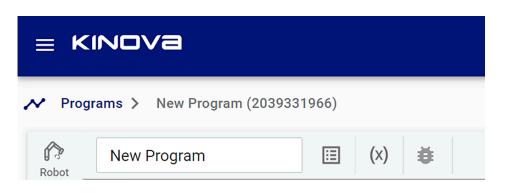


Figure 150: Variable Manager (X) button location on the Program page



The **Variable Manager** page launches. All the variables that currently defined for the current program are under the **Program Variables** pane. All the variables that are currently defined globally for all programs are in the **Persistent Variables** pane.

Variable Manager						×
1 Program Variables	Persistent Variables					
2 Name	3 Type 4 Schen	na 5 6 Default value	7 Unit	8	Actions	
<pre> mew_variable_0 </pre>	Number 👻	5	unspecified 👻			Î
<pre># new_variable_1</pre>	Number 👻	☑ 1	unspecified 👻			Î
s new_variable_2	String 👻	✓ Text	N/A			Î
				(%		+
				(10)	×	CLOSE

Figure 151: The Variable Manager page

- 1 Work with the variables that are defined only for the currently selected program by making sure **Program Variables** is selected.
- 2 Name of variable.
- 3 The **Type** of the variable is displayed. Tap it to change the type.



Note: You cannot change the type of the variable when the variable is being used in a program. If you attempt to change the type, a warning dialog launches.

Warning: Variable Is Used								
Cannot change type, schema	or unit of a variable that is used. Table	e below shows where the variable is beir	ng used.					
Where Used								
Program	Action	Action Type						
New Program	counter	Set						
New Program		Loop						
			✓ CLOSE					

Tap **CLOSE** to close the dialog. Nothing changes on the **Variable Manager** page.



1

4 The **Schema** of the variable is available only for **Object** types. Tap it to change the **Schema**.

Note: You cannot change the type of the variable when the variable is being used in a program. If you attempt to change the type, a warning dialog launches.

Warning: Variable Is Used									
Cannot change type, schema or unit of a varial	ble that is used. Table below sho	ws where the variable is being used.							
Where Used									
Program	Action	Action Type							
New Program	counter	Set							
New Program		Loop							
			🗸 CLOSE						

Tap **CLOSE** to close the dialog. Nothing changes on the **Variable Manager** page.

- 5 A check mark in a box indicates the variable has a default value. Tap to deselect the box when you do not want the variable to have a default value.
- 6 The **Default** value of the variable is displayed when the checkbox is selected. Enter a different default value for the variable.
- 7 The **Unit** associated with a variable of **Type Number** is displayed. Tap to change the unit, especially when the **Unit** is listed as **unspecified**.
- ⁸ Edit (\checkmark), Duplicate (\blacksquare), and Delete (\blacksquare) are **Actions** that you can take on the variables.



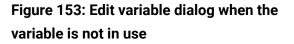
Tap \checkmark to edit the name of the variable. The **Edit variable** dialog launches and shows where the variable is already in use.



Important: When you change the name of a variable that is already in use, make sure to select **Rename all references**.

Edit variable	9		×
Name		new_variable_0	
Rename all reference	s		
Where Used			
Program	Action	Action T	уре
New Program	counter	Set	
New Program		Loop	
		× CLOSE	🗸 SAVE

Figure 152: Edit variable dialog when the variable is in use



Tap to duplicate the current variable. The duplicated variable has appends to the name of the copied variable the string "_copy" and the number of times the same variable has been copied.

Example: Suppose the variable name is *new_variable_0*. The first time it is duplicated, the new variable is named *new_variable_0_copy0*. The second time it is duplicated, the new variable is named *new_variable_0_copy1*.



Тар 🗍	to delete the variable.					
When	the variable is being used, a Delete warning or	confir	mation dialog laur	iches.		
		Dele	ete			
		arm_plugin/arm_plugin_arm				
	te iable_0_copy0 sure you want to delete this variable?	Cannot delete a used variable! Table below shows where used.				
	Figure 154: Delete confirmation dialog	W	here Used			
		Progr	am	Action	Action Ty	
		New	Program		Waypoints	
					CANCE	



⁹ Tap \bigcirc to create a variable for the program.

The **Create Variable** dialog launches. Enter a meaningful name for the new variable.

10 Tap **CLOSE** to close the **Variable Manager** page and return to the **Programs** page.

Related topics

Variables on page 215 Industrial I/O Plugin on page 324

Adding a variable global to all programs from the Variable

Manager page

Variables can be created either for all programs a robot uses or for only a specific program. Variables created for all programs can also be made from the **Variable Manager** page.



About this task

Variables that belong to the global namespace are accessible as **Persistent Variables** in the **Select Variable** and **Variable Manager** pages. Variables defined here are available to all programs.

Procedure

- 1. Select a program from the **Programs** page.
- 2. Tap Variable Manager (X).

≡ K	INOVA				
🖍 Prog	rams > New Program (203933	1966)			
Robot	New Program	⊞	(x)	Ŭ	

The Variable Manager page launches.

Variable Manage	er						×
Program Variables	Persistent Variables						
						Q	Ŧ
Name		Туре	Schema	Unit	Default value		Actions
		No var	iables found				_
							+
						;	× CLOSE





3. Tap the Persistent Variables pane.

lamespace globals arm_plugin industrial_io					م ب
ame	Туре	Schema	Unit	Value	Actions
bome	Object 👻	Default - Joint Angles 👻	N/A	Value {}	× 1
🛢 package	Object 👻	Default - Joint Angles 👻	N/A	Value {}	× 11
e zero	Object 👻	Default - Joint Angles 👻	N/A	Value {}	/ 1

- 4. Select the appropriate *namespace* for the variable that is about to be created.
- **5.** Tap •.

The Create Variable dialog launches.

Add a new vari	able	
Name	new_variable_2	
	CANCEL	✓ SAVE

6. Enter a meaningful name for the global variable.

Underscores are allowed. Spaces and dashes are not allowed in the name.

7. Tap SAVE.

The new variable is displayed on the **Variable Manager** page. The variable can also be seen on the **Select Variable** and **Variables** pages.

8. Select one **Type** for the variable.

Option	Description
String	A word, phrase, or sentence
Boolean	False or True
Number	Integer or floating point number
Object	A Schema



Option

Description

- Unspecified
- Default Pose
- Default Joint Angles
- Default Payload
- Arm Plugin Matrix Output
- Arm Plugin Waypoints Output
- Industrial I/O Plugin Read Input Output
- Note: The schemas that are listed are the default schemas. When additional plugins are installed, their associated schema are available from the **Object** menu.
- **9.** (Only when the variable is of **Type Number**. Enter a number in the **Value** box and associate a **Unit** of measurement from the menu.



Important: When you leave the **Unit** as **unspecified**, the variable has no unit associated with it.

10. (Only when the variable is of **Type Object**.) Tap the **Schema** for the type of object that variable represents.



Tap the Value icon ({}) to enter the values in the JSON Object Editor and tap SAVE.
 The information entered can then be available in entities of various tiles.

JSON Object Edit	or	
new_variable_0		
JSON Object Editor		
{"angles":[0,0,0,0,0,0]}		
	CANCEL	🗸 SAVE

Figure 156: Editor for object type Unspecified

JSON Object Editor				
new_variable	_0			
Pose				
0 0	mm			
Ч 0	mm			
2 0	mm			
Theta X0	٥			
Theta Y0	o			
Theta Z	o			
	CANCEL SAVE			

Figure 157: Editor for object type Default - Pose

JSON Objec	t Editor	
new_variabl	e_0	•
Joint Angles		
Angle 0	٥	$\downarrow \downarrow$
Angle0	٥	↑ ↓
Angle 0	٥	↑ ↓
Angle	٥	↑ ↓
Angle	0	↑ ↓
Angle	0	↑ ↓
•		• •
		EL 🗸 SAVE

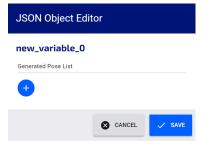


Figure 159: Editor object type Default -Payload

Figure 158: Editor for object type Default -Joint Angles



new_variable_0		Generated Pose List	JSON Object Editor					
Generated Pose List		•	new_variable_0					
	+	-	Generated Pose List					

Figure 160: Editor object type Arm Plugin -Matrix - Output

JSON Object B	Editor	
new_variable_	.0	Î
0 0	mm	
Ч 0	mm	
2 0	mm	
Theta X0	0	
Theta Y0	٥	
Theta Z	0	
Angles		
0	۰	$\land \checkmark$
0	٥	^ ↓
0	o	^ ↓
0	٥	↑↓ -
	S CANCEL	V SAVE

Figure 161: Editor object typeArm Plugin -Waypoints - Output when first invoked





Figure 162: Editor object typeIndustrial I/O Plugin - Read Input - Output

Adding a variable global only to a specific program

A program can benefit from global variables that are specific only to that program. Variables that are global only within a program are created from the **Variable Manager** page.

About this task

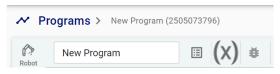
Variables that are added to the program namespace are available as **Program Variables** on the **Variable Manager** and **Select Variable** pages.

Procedure

Tap Programming > Programs and select a program.
 The Program page launches.



2. Tap (X) in the banner beside the name of the program.



The Variable Manager page launches.

Program Variables	Persistent Variables									
									Q ·	Ŧ
me		Туре	Schema	Unit			Default value		Actions	
mew_variable_0		Number 👻		unspecified	÷		5	1		Î
new_variable_1		Number 👻		unspecified	Ŧ		1	1		1
mew_variable_1		Number 👻		unspecified	•	~	1	1	•	

- 3. Tap Program Variables.
- **4.** Tap •.

The Create Variable dialog launches.

Create Variable		×
Name	new_variable_2	
	× CLOSE	✓ SAVE

5. Enter a meaningful name for the variable.

Underscores are allowed. Spaces and dashes are not allowed in the name.

6. Tap SAVE.

The new variable is displayed on the **Program Variables** pane of the **Variable Manager** page.

Variable Manage	r								×
Program Variables	Persistent Variables								
								Q	Ŧ
Name		Туре	Schema	Unit			Default value	Actio	ns
mew_variable_0		Number 👻		unspecified	-	5			Î
mew_variable_1		Number 👻		unspecified	Ŧ	1			ii.
A new_variable_2		String 👻		N/A				•	+
								>	CLOSE



7. Select a **Type** for the variable.

Option	Description
String	A word, phrase, or sentence
Boolean	False or True
Number	Enter an integer or floating point number.
	Select a Unit for the number.
Object	A Schema
	• Unspecified
	• Default - Pose
	Default - Joint Angles
	• Default - Payload
	Arm Plugin - Matrix - Output
	Arm Plugin - Waypoints - Output
	Industrial I/O Plugin - Read Input - Output
	Note: The schemas that are listed are the default schemas.

8. (Only when the variable is of **Type Object**.) Tap the **Schema** for the type of object that variable represents.



9. (Only when the variable is of **Type Object**.) Tap the **Value** icon ({}) next and enter the values in the **JSON Object Editor** and tap **SAVE**.

The variable is available in entities of various tiles.

JSON Object Edit	tor	
new_variable_0 JSON Object Editor {"angles"-{0,0,0,0,0,0}}		
	CANCEL	✓ SAVE

Figure 163: Editor for object type Unspecified

JSON Object	Editor
new_variable	2_0
Pose	
0 0	mm
Ч 0	mm
2 0	mm
Theta X0	•
Theta Y0	o
Theta Z O	¢
	CANCEL V SAVE

Figure 164: Editor for object type Default - Pose

JSON Object Editor					
new_variable_0)	^			
Joint Angles					
Angle 0	٥	↑ ↓			
Angle	٥	↑ ↓			
Angle	0	↑ ↓			
Angle	٥	↑ ↓			
Angle	٥	↑ ↓			
Angle0	¢	↑ ↓			

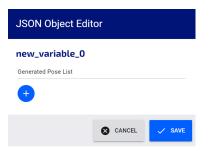


Figure 166: Editor object type Default -Payload

Figure 165: Editor for object type Default -Joint Angles



JSON Object Editor						
new_variable_0						
Generated Pose List						
+						
	CANCEL	SAVE				

Figure 167: Editor object type Arm Plugin -Matrix - Output

	Â
	- 1
\uparrow	\mathbf{v}
\uparrow	\mathbf{v}
•	↓ -
_	SAVE

Figure 168: Editor object type Arm Plugin -Waypoints - Output





Figure 169: Editor object typeIndustrial I/O Plugin - Read Input - Output

10. Tap CLOSE.

The Select Variable page closes and the Program page is displayed.



Tip: You can also create variables in context from the Select Variable page.

- **11.** Tap a tile in the **Sequence editor** pane.
- 12. Tap (X) beside Output Results To Variable.

The **Select Variable** page launches with the name of the field to which the variable is to be associated.

Program Variables	Pe	rsistent Variabl	es				Variable Preview	
Field - Maximum Iterations 🕢					Q -	-	new_variable_0	
							Variable Options	_
ame	Туре	Schema	Default value	Unit	Actions		Add index accessor	
😰 new_variable_0 💙	Number	-	5	unspecified ~	/ 1	Ŧ	Add array length accessor	
new_variable_1	Number	-	1	unspecified ~	/ 6	Ŧ		
					(



Selecting a variable

Sometimes you need to select a variable that is already defined and use it in a program.

About this task

It assumes that all program variables and global variables are already defined.

Procedure

- 1. Drag and drop an action tile in the Sequence editor.
- 2. Tap (X) beside any field in the Tile configuration pane.



Note: The **(X)** that launches the **Select Variable** page is displayed in different locations in the **Tile configuration**, depending on which tile is selected in the program.

The selectable variables are filtered, based on the type, schema, and units associated with the field.

The Select Variable page launches.

Select Varial	ble							×
Program Var	riables I	Persistent Variables					Variable Preview globals/new_varia	able_0
Field - Output Result Name	ts To Variable 😑 Type	Schema	Default value	Unit	Q	tions	Variable Options	
@ new_variabl			5	unspecified 👻		i	Add array length accessor	
🕖 new_variabl	le_1 Number 👻		☑ 1	unspecified 👻	. /	6 1		
🔕 new_variabl	le_2 String -		Value	N/A	1	+		
			Value				X CLOSE	SELECT

3. Tap the variable that you want.



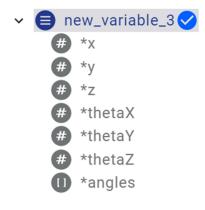
Note: You can select from **Program Variables** or **Persistent Variables**. If the variable you select is not of the same type as the field, a tip displays an error message.



Select Variable				Select Varia	ble
Program Variables	Per	sistent Variables		Program Vari	ables Persiste
Field - Time #				Field - Time #	
Name	Туре	Schema	Default value	Name	Туре
<pre>mew_variable_0</pre>	Variable unit is in	compatible with field	internal unit. Should be s.	mew_variab	le_0 Number ▼
<pre># new_variable_1</pre>	Number 👻		1	mew_variab	le_1 Number ▼
Aa new_variable_2	String 👻		✓ Text	🗛 new_variab	le_2 Wrong type.
			— p		

Note: If the variable that you need is not defined as a variable global to the program and is not defined as a persistent variable, you can create the variable by tapping • and creating the desired variable.

The name of the variable is highlighted and a check mark displays beside the name.



Tapping on the small arrow beside the variable name reveals the content of that variable if it is a complex variable.





4. Tap SELECT.

The Select Variable page closes.

The name of the selected variable displays in the **Output Results To Variable** text box.



Remember: The name of the selected variable is in the text box where the **Select Variable** is invoked.

- Output Results To Variable		
new_variable_2	\times	(X)



Tip: Clear any text field that is filled with a selected variable or selected variable element by tapping the X in the text field.

Deleting a variable that is being used in a program

When you duplicate a program to speed up program creation, you may find that some variables are not needed for your new program. You need to delete the variable, but only from the program.

About this task

Variables that are used in programs are on the **Program Variables** pane of the **Variable Manager** page. When you attempt to delete a program variable that is used by the program from the **Variable Manager** page, a **Delete** warning dialog launches.

Delete			
arm_plugin/arm_plugin_arm			
Cannot delete a used used.	d variable! Table be	low shows where the vari	able is being
Where Used			Q =
Program	Action	Action Type	
New Program		Waypoints	
		CANCEL	✓ DELETE

Figure 170: Delete program variable warning dialog



From the **Delete** warning dialog, you can see which program is using the variable and where it is being used.



Important: Do not delete any variable defined as a global variable from the **Persistent Variables** pane of the **Variable Manager** and **Select Variable** pages unless you know for a fact that the variable in question is not used in any program used by the robot.

Procedure

- 1. Take note of all the places the variable is used in the program.
- 2. Tap CLOSE on the Delete warning dialog.
- 3. Tap CLOSE on the Variable Manager page.
- 4. Tap on the tile corresponding to the location of the variable.
- Tap the X beside the variable in the Tile configuration. The field clears.
- 6. Launch the Variable Manager page .
- 7. Select the variable and tap .The **Delete** confirmation dialog launches.
- 8. Tap Delete.

Results

The variable is no longer available.

Core tiles

The **Programs** page has a set two sets of core tiles that are used to drag and drop into the **Sequence editor** to help create programs.



Figure 171: Basic action tiles



Tile	Tile name	Description
Condition	Condition	Create a condition in the program.
C⊐) Loop	Loop	Create a loop in the program.
n	Message	Create a message in the program.
Message		Note: Runtime values of
		variables can be printed in
		messages by using the syntax
		\${variable_name}
		·
۹¢ ۱۹	Set	Set the value of a variable. If there is a default value, Set overrides the default value.
X Wait Time	Wait Time	Introduce a period of time to wait before proceeding to the next step in the program.
A		

Table 77: Basic action tiles

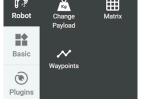


Figure 172: Robot tiles

Table 78: Tiles

Tile	Tile name	Description
Change Payload	Change Payload	Define a new payload during the course of a program.



Tile	Tile name	Description
Hatrix	Matrix	Define a matrix of positions.
~	Waypoints	Create a list of waypoints in the program.
Waypoints		Remember: Each list must be all <i>angular</i> or all <i>Cartesian</i> .

Important: Aside from the core tiles, each installed *plugin* may have its own set of tiles. These additional tiles are displayed in the same area as the core actions to ease programming.

Each core tile has its own set of variables that must be defined in the **Tile configuration**.

Common core parameters in the Tile Configuration pane

The **Tile configuration** changes dynamically, depending on which tile is dragged into the **Sequence editor**.

The content of the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically with the selected tile. However, there are a few parameters that remain the same for all tiles.

- Action Name	Output Results To Variable	1	
\sim		(x)	

Figure 173: Common parameters in the Tile Configuration pane

Table 79: Entities common to all core tiles

Item	Description
Action Name	Enter a meaningful name for the currently selected tile.
Output Results To Variable	Output results of a variable that is selected for the currently selected tile.
	Note: Not all tiles have any information for this field.



Item	Description
(X)	Tap to launch the Select Variable page. Select and modify, or create a variable.
	Note: Not all tiles can select a variable. It is used for the Industrial I/O tiles.
	Play the selected tile when you are in Hold-to-Run mode. It launches Variables use by action , where you can modify values, if necessary, before playing tapping PLAY .
-0-	Tap to launch a circle help visualize the angle. Use the circle to change the angle of the joint.

Basic: Set tile parameters

The **Set** tile is a core basic tile. When you drag it into an available tile in the **Sequence editor**, the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically to expose the entities of **Set** that can be configured.

Use Set when you need to set the value of one or more variables.



Tip: Whenever you see **(X)** beside an exposed entity, tap it to launch the **Select Variable** page and store the value you entered in a variable.

Variable			— Value * ————	
globals/new_variable_0	\times	(X)	0	S
Variable				
		(x)		

Figure 174: Tile configuration when Set is the current tile



Item	Description
Action Name	Select an action from the list that launches when you tap it or enter a meaningful action name for the selected tile.
Variable	Enter a meaningful name for the variable.
	Note: Tapping the text field launches the Select Variable window where you can select an existing variable, in which case you are assigning the variable a value, or you can create a variable.
Value	Enter the value of the variable.
X	Tap to delete the variable from the list.
•	Tap to add another variable.

Table 80: Core basic Set entities

Basic: Wait tile parameters

The **Wait Time** tile is a core basic tile. When you drag it into an available tile in the **Sequence editor**, the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically to expose the entities of **Wait Time** that can be configured.

Use **Wait Time** when you need to introduce a specified amount of time for the robot to stop moving before proceeding in the program.



Remember: Whenever you see **(X)** beside an exposed entity, tap it to launch the **Select Variable** page and store the value you entered in a variable.

Action Name —			
O Time	S	(x)	

Figure 175: The Tile configuration when Wait Time is the current tile

Table 81: Core basic Wait Time entities

ltem	Description
Time	Enter either an integer or a floating point value. Time is measured in seconds.



Basic: Condition tile parameters

The **Condition** tile is a core basic tile. When you drag it into an available tile in the **Sequence editor**, the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically to expose the entities of **Condition** that can be configured.

Use **Condition** when you need to introduce one or more conditions in the program before proceeding in the program.



Tip: Whenever you see **(X)** beside an exposed entity, tap it to launch the **Select Variable** page and store the value you entered in a variable.

When the **Condition** tile is dragged into the **Sequence editor**, it expands.



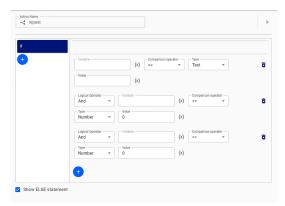


Figure 176: The Condition tile expands in the Sequence editor

Figure 177: The Tile configuration when Condition is the current tile

A condition starts with **If** and requires variables and values to set the condition.

Table 82: Core basic Condition entities

Item	Description
Variable	Tap to launch the Select Variable window where you can select or create a variable to use in the condition.
Comparison operator	Select from the drop-down.
	• ==
	• >
	• >=
	• <
	• <=



Item	Description
Туре	Select from the drop-down.
	• Boolean: true, false
	Number: integer or floating point
	Text: string of letters
Value	Enter or select the value associated with the selected type.
•	Tap to introduce an alternative condition as an Else If statement. The Else If also requires a Variable , Comparison operator , Type , Value for the selected Type.
	When Else If is selected, another tile is displayed in the Sequence editor .
	-* + +
Show ELSE statement	Select to show the program going through the else condition. The tile in the Sequence editor expands.
	- ↓
	→

Basic: Loop tile parameters

The **Loop** tile is a core basic tile. When you drag it into an available tile in the **Sequence editor**, the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically to expose the entities of **Loop** that can be configured.

Use **Loop** when you need actions to repeat a certain number of times.



Tip: Whenever you see **(X)** beside an exposed entity, tap it to launch the **Select Variable** page and store the value you entered in a variable.

When the **Loop** tile is dragged into the **Sequence editor**, it expands.



249



t)

Figure 178: The Loop tile expanded in the Sequence editor

The parameters of the Loop tile are divided into the global aspects of an action an the specific conditions of the variable, known as the Looping Conditions.

Table 83: Core basic Loop entities	

Item	Description
Action Name	Select an action from the list that launches when you tap it or enter
	a meaningful action name for the selected tile.
Do at least once	Select if you need to perform the actions in the loop at least once.
Iterator	Tap to select or create a variable that increments automatically by 1 on each repetition of the actions in the loop.
	 The variable used as an iterator must be of type integer. The variable is used for iterating, or counting, over a loop. The value of the iterator can be modified during run-time; its modified value is taken into consideration. The default value is used when the iterator has no value defined.
	Example: When the iterator variable has a default of 0 and has not be used yet, the iterator uses 0 as the first number. When the iterator has a default value of 5 and
	has not be used yet, the iterator starts counting from 5.



Item	Description	
Maximum Iterations	Enter the maximum number of times the actions within the loop are needed.	
	Warning: When Maximum Iterations is set to 0, the actions in the loop repeat as long as the Looping Conditions are true.	
	Note: The default maximum number of iterations is 1.	
Looping Conditions		
Variable	Tap to launch the Select Variable window where you can select or create a variable to use for the loop.	
	<i>Tip:</i> The variable used in the Looping Conditions can be any variable, including the Iterator . The value and the variable that are being compared must be of the same type.	
Comparison operator.	Select from the drop-down.	
	 ==: equals >: greater than >=: greater than or equal <: less than <=: less than or equal !=: not equal 	
Value	Enter the value associated with the selected type.	
	Alternatively, tap (X) to select a variable as the value.	
	The value entered, or the variable selected, must be of the same type as the Variable in the LoopingConditions pane.	



Item	Description
Logical Operator	Select from the drop-down.
	• And
	• Or
	You need the logical operator to combine two or more conditions for the loop to continue.
•	Tap to add more conditions.

Examples of maximum iterations

Example 1: The default value of the iterator variable is 0. The maximum number of iterations is 1. The loop is performed one time; the value of the iterator is 0.

Example 2: The default value of the iterator variable is 1. The maximum number of iterations is 1. The loop is performed one time; the value of the iterator is 1.

Example 3: The default value of the iterator variable is 5. The maximum number of iterations is 1. The loop is performed one time; the value of the iterator is 5.

Example 4: The default value of the iterator variable is 0. The maximum number of iterations is 5. The loop is performed five times; the value of the iterator is 4.

Example 5: The default value of the iterator variable is 1. The maximum number of iterations is 5. The loop is performed five times; the value of the iterator is 5.

Basic: Message tile parameters

The **Message** tile is a core basic tile. When you drag it into an available tile in the **Sequence** editor, the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically to expose the entities of **Message** that can be configured.

Use **Message** when you want to print messages when a program runs.



Action Name	►
Message	
Level	

Figure 179: The Tile configuration when Message is the current tile

Although messages are primarily string based, you can print out the values of variables.

Item	Description		
Message	Enter a message. Messages can contain variables.		
	Example		
	A variable can be defined as meaningful_variable_name = { "employee": {"name":"John", "age":30, "city":"Montreal"}		
	Enter in the message field: Hello, \${meaningful_variable_name.employee.name}.		
	When the program reaches the message, it prints out Hello, John.		
Level	Select the level of severity for the message.		
	 Error Informative Warning 		

Table 84: Core basic Message entities

Robot: Matrix tile parameters

The **Matrix** tile is a core robot tile. When you drag it into an available tile in the **Sequence editor**, the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically to expose the entities of the matrix that can be configured.



The **Matrix** tile is used to define a large number of Cartesian poses that are spaced evenly on a 3D grid. Only a few parameters must be entered. Store the list of poses in a variable so that it can be used in a program.



1

Important: The tile does not make the robot move; it only performs the computations needed to make the robot move.

The parameters of the matrix are grouped into three parts. Each part is a sub-pane in the **Tile configuration**. Each sub-pane is accessible by tapping on its name.

- Parameters
- Coordinates

Tip: Whenever you see **(X)** beside an exposed entity, tap it to launch the **Select Variable** page and store the value you entered in a variable.

Action Name	Output Results To Variable		(x)	►
Parameters	Coordinates			
Grid (X)				
Number of rows	(X) Number of columns	(x)		
Bottom left	→ (x) Order → Rows first, zigzag →	(x)		
Layers (X)				
Number of layers	(x) Distance between layers new_variable_0 (x)			
Bottom to top?				

Figure 180: Entities of the Matrix tile on the Parameter sub-pane in the Tile configuration

Table 85: Core robot Matrix entities on the Parameters sub-pane

Item	Description
Grid	
Number of rows	Enter the number of rows in the matrix.
Number of columns	Enter the number of columns in the matrix.



Item	Description
Starting point	Select from the drop-down.
	Bottom left
	Bottom right
	Top left
	・ Top right
Order	Select from the drop-down.
	 Rows first, zigzag
	 Rows first, back and forth
	Columns first, zigzag
	Columns first, back and forth
	Randomized
Layers	
Number of layers	Enter the number of layers in the matrix.
Distance between layers	Tap in the text field or tap (X) to select, or create, a variable
	that defines the distance between layers.
Bottom to top?	Select to run the matrix from the bottom layer to the top layer.
	Deselect to play from the top layer to the bottom.





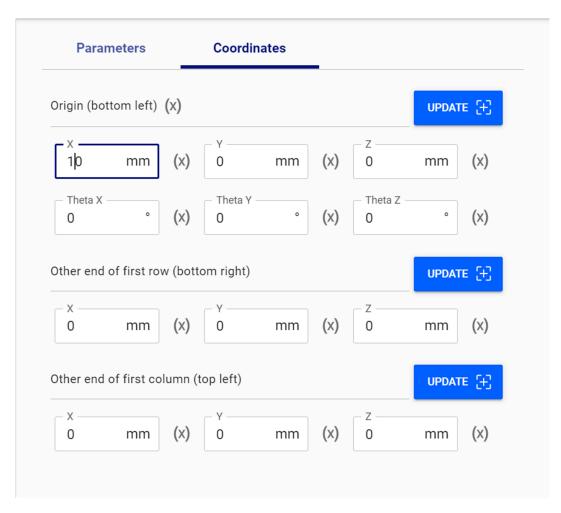


Figure 181: Entities of the Matrix tile on the Coordinates sub-pane in the Tile configuration

Item	Description	
Origin	The origin is the selected Starting point on the Parameters sub-pane.	
	Tap the X , Y , Z , Theta X , Theta Y , Theta Z text boxes, or the (X) beside them, to select or create a variable that has the associated values.	
	Remember: Tap UPDATE when you change the values in the text boxes. Tap CLEAR to undo changes you made.	
	Note: You can also use the snapshot button on the wrist of the robot to set the origin.	



Item	Desc	Description	
Other end of first row	Enter	Enter values for X , Y , and Z .	
	Â	Remember: Tap UPDATE when you change the values in the text boxes. Tap CLEAR to undo changes you made.	
		Note: You can also use the snapshot button on the wrist of the robot to set the end of the first row.	
Other end of the first column	Enter values for X , Y , and Z .		
	A	Remember: Tap UPDATE when you change the values in the text boxes. Tap CLEAR to undo changes you made.	
	Ż	Note: You can also use the snapshot button on the wrist of the robot to set the end of the first column.	

Robot: Change Payload tile parameters

The **Change Payload** tile is a core robot tile. When you drag it into an available tile in the **Sequence editor**, the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically to expose the entities of the payload that can be configured.

The **Change Payload** tile is used to configure payloads while a program is running. No other action can run while the **Change Payload** is running. If the program is stopped at the time the **Change Payload** tile is active, the **Change Payload** action remains active. One or more **Change Payload** actions can be dragged into the **Sequence editor** to create a program.

The parameters of a payload are grouped into three parts.

• Payload

KINOVA

- Center of mass
- Inertia Matrix

The parameters are modifiable when the robot is in one of three states.

- The arm is switched off.
- The arm is switched on and is in Monitored Stop mode.
- The arm is switched on and is in Hold-to-Run mode.

Tip: Whenever you see (X) beside an exposed entity, tap it to launch the **Select Variable** page and store the value you entered in a variable.

		SET AS AC	TIVE [+]
kg·m² (X)	lzz 0	kg∙m²	(X)
kg·m² (X)	lyz O	kg∙m²	? (x)
	kg·m² (X)	kg⋅m² (X) 0	kg·m ² (X)

Figure 182: Entities of the Matrix tile on the Parameter sub-pane in the Tile configuration

Table 87: Core robot Change Payload entities

ltem

Description

Payload



Item	Description
SET AS ACTIVE	Tap to set the payload configuration defined in the parameter configuration pane as active.
	The currently active payload is displayed in the Payload pane on Systems > Robot > Arm .
Mass	Enter the mass of the new payload.
	Valid range for mass: 0.0000 to 9.0000 kg
Center of mass	
Translation along the x-axis	Enter the translation along the x-axis with respect to the flange
	Valid range: -1000 to 1000 mm
Translation along the y-axis	Enter the translation along the y-axis with respect to the flange
	Valid range: -1000 to 1000 mm
Translation along the z-axis	Enter the translation along the z-axis with respect to the flange
	Valid range: -1000 to 1000 mm
Inertia Matrix	
lxx	Enter the moment of inertia with respect to the x-axis of the flange
	Valid range: 0 to 1 kg m ²
Іуу	Enter the moment of inertia with respect to the y-axis of the flange
	Valid range: 0 to 1 kg m ²
Izz	Enter the moment of inertia with respect to the z-axis of the flange
	Valid range: 0 to 1 kg m ²
lxy	Enter the product of inertia lxy
	Valid range: -1 to 1 kg m ²



Item	Description
lxz	Enter the product of inertia Ixz
	Valid range: -1 to 1 kg m ²
lyz	Enter the product of inertia lyz
	Valid range: -1 to 1 kg m ²

Robot: Waypoints tile parameters

The **Waypoints** tile is a core robot tile. When you drag it into an available tile in the **Sequence** editor, the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically to expose the entities of the waypoints that can be configured.

The parameters of the list of waypoints are grouped into three parts. Each part is a sub-pane in the **Tile configuration**. Each sub-pane is accessible by tapping on its name.

- Waypoints
- Constraints
- Custom Frame



Tip: Whenever you see **(X)** beside an exposed entity, tap it to launch the **Select Variable** page and store the value you entered in a variable.

Waypoint parameters

Each Waypoints tile in a program must define one or more waypoints for the robot to move.

The **Waypoints** tile holds a configurable list of waypoints the robot uses to move to complete a task.



Important: The arm must be switched on before you can define waypoints for the robot.



Tip: Configure the waypoints in the waypoint list when you are in Monitored Stop mode or Hold-to-Run mode. Select the mode from the Robot control panel.

Some of the parameters are the same regardless of the type of waypoint; others are specific to the type of waypoint.



Custom Range Custom Range
Custom Range
ous contraining co
added.
a

Figure 183: Parameters common to all types of waypoints

Table 88: Parameters common to all types of waypoints

Item	Description
Туре	Select Cartesian , which is moving the arm, or Angular , which is moving the joints.
Optimal bleeding	When selected, the robot takes an time-optimal path from one end of the trajectory to another without actually reaching the intermediary points.
•	Tap + in the Waypoints sub-pane to add a waypoint to the list of waypoints for the currently selected waypoint tile.
	The waypoint is added to the list of waypoints.
	Parameters for the new waypoint launches in the Waypoints sub-pane. The parameters that are displayed depend on what is selected from Type .



Item	Description
Index	Each waypoint in the list of waypoints in the waypoints tile has an associated index number. The first waypoint is 1, the second is 2, and so on. Note: The field is read-only. It can be used as a reference when you want to use Custom Range.
Name	Enter a meaningful name for the currently selected waypoint in the list of waypoints.

Cartesian waypoint parameters

When you select **Cartesian** as the waypoint type, the parameters related to Cartesian poses are displayed.

Waypoints	Constraints Custom Frame				
Type @ Cartesian v	Optimal blending				
Go-to Options(Play Custom Range 👻	Custom Range				
sypoints					
lome waypoints have speci	c limits. (1)				
Waypoint #1					↑↓ 3
Waypoint #2			SET AS SINGLE GO-TO	TAS FIRST GO-TO	оо-то 🖂 🛛 иррате 🕀
Waypoint #3		aypoint #1			
•	Base		- @ -		
	Pose (X)				
	x (x)		-180	* (x)	
	500 mm (x)		-180	* (×)	
	z (x)		-180	° (x)	
	Use waypoint-specific speed limits				
	Use waypoint-specific acceleration limits				
	TCP Translation Speed :				250 mm/s
	TCP Rotation Speed :	•			150 */s
	TCP Translation Acceleration :	•			5000 mm/s ²
	TCP Rotation Acceleration :	•			600 */82

Figure 184: Parameters of Cartesian waypoints



Item	Description
Reference Frame	Select a frame of reference. The waypoint pose converts automatically with respect to the frame of reference.
	• Base
	• Tool
	Custom
Pose	Pose is expressed in Cartesian coordinates.
X, Y, Z	The current Cartesian position of the waypoint selected in the list is displayed. Change the values if you know your values are more accurate than what is currently listed. Measurements are in millimeters.
Theta X, Theta Y, Theta Z	The current angular position of the waypoint selected in the list. Change the values if you know your values are more accurate than what is currently listed. Measurements are in degrees.
Use waypoint-specific speed limits	Select when you want to set a specific speed limit on the robot at the selected waypoint instead of using the parametric values shared among all waypoints in the list.
	The Speed Limits sub-pane launches.
Speed Limits sub-pane	
TCP Translation Speed	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired translation speed for the <i>TCP</i> at the selected waypoint.
	Minimum: 10 mm/s
	Maximum: 2000 mm/s
TCP Rotation Speed	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired rotational speed for the <i>TCP</i> at the selected waypoint.
	Minimum: 1 °/s
	Maximum: 600 °/s

Table 89: Parameters of Cartesian waypoints



Item	Description
Use waypoint-specific acceleration limits	Select when you want to use specific acceleration limits on the robot at the selected waypoint instead of using the parametric values shared among all waypoints in the list.
	The Acceleration Limits sub-pane launches.
Acceleration Limits sub-pane	
TCP Translation Acceleration	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired translation acceleration for the <i>TCP</i> at the selected waypoint.
	Minimum: 10 mm/s ²
	Maximum: 12,000 mm/s ²
TCP Rotation Acceleration	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired orientation acceleration for the <i>TCP</i> at the selected waypoint.
	Minimum: 1 °/s ²
	Maximum: 1500 °/s ² .

Angular waypoint parameters

When you select **Angular** as the waypoint type, the parameters related to the orientation of the robot at that location are displayed



,	Copus Results to Variable	0
Waypoints	Constraints Custom Frame	
kngular v	Optimal blending	
io to Options	Custom Range	
Play Custom Range	e 🕶 🛛 1.3	
points		
rne waypoints nave i	peone inner, (i)	↑ ↓ ā
/aypoint #2	SET AS SHOLD OCTO 😥 SET AS FROT OCTO 🕃 SET AS FROT OCTO	60-TO 💬 UPDATE 💥
laypoint #3	1 Name Waypoint #1	
•	Angles (X)	
	- Join - 1 192.3 * (i)	
	261.7 (x)	
	Joint - 2	
	218.4 ° (x)	
	* (x)	
	* (x)	
	Use waypoint-specific speed limits Use waypoint-specific acceleration limits	
	Use waypoint-specific acceleration limits	60 ¹ /s
	Use waypoint-specific acceleration limits Spret Limits	60 ¹ /s
	Use waypoint-specific acceleration limits Spect Limit Acceleration	
	Use waypoint-specific acceleration limits Speed Limits Joint 1: Joint 2:	60 */s
	West waypoint-specific acceleration limits Specific limits Joint 1: Joint 2:	60 */s 60 */s 140 */s
	Is waypoint-specific acceleration limits Speak Limits Joint 1 Joint 2 Joint 3	60 '/s 60 '/s 140 '/s 140 '/s
	West waypoint-specific acceleration limits Specific limits Joint 1: Joint 2:	60 */s 60 */s 140 */s
	Is we waypoint-specific acceleration limits Spect limits Spect limits Joint 1 Joint 2 Joint 3 Joint 4 Joint 5 Joint 5 Acceleration Limits	60 '/s 60 '/s 140 '/s 140 '/s 140 '/s
	Use wayooin-specific acceleration limits Spect Units Joint 1 Joint 2 Joint 3 Joint 3	60 '/s 60 '/s 140 '/s 140 '/s
	Is we waypoint-specific acceleration limits Spect limits Spect limits Joint 1 Joint 2 Joint 3 Joint 4 Joint 5 Joint 5 Acceleration Limits	60 '/s 60 '/s 140 '/s 140 '/s 140 '/s
	Is the waypoint-specific acceleration limits Spect limits Joint 1: Joint 2: Joint 3: Joint 4: Joint 5: Joint 1:	60 1/2 60 1/2 140 1/2 140 1/2 140 1/2 200 1/2
	Is the waypoint-specific acceleration limits Specific acceleration limits Specific acceleration limits Joint 1 Joint 2 Joint 3 Joint 3 Joint 3 Joint 3 Joint 3 Joint 1 Joint 3 Joint 2 Joint 3 Joint 4 Joint 5 Joint 1 Joint 2 Joint 2	60 1/2 60 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 120 7/2 120 7/2
	Use waypoint-specific acceleration limits Spections Join 1 Join 2 Join 3 Join 4 Join 5 Join 6 Join 7 Join 7 Join 8 Join 9 Join 10 Join 20 Join 30 Join 4	60 7/2 60 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2 140 7/2
	Use waypoint-specific acceleration limits Specific acceleration limits Joint 1 Joint 2 Joint 3 Joint 4 Joint 5 Joint 5 Joint 8 Joint 9	60 1/8 60 1/8 140 1/9 142 1/8 142 1/8 142 1/8 200 1/9 ² 200 1/9 ²

Figure 185: Parameters of angular waypoints

Table 90: Parameters of Angular waypoints

Item	Description
Angles	The pose is expressed in degrees for each of the joints.
Joint 1, Joint 2,Joint 3, Joint 4, Joint 5, Joint 6	The current angular position of each joint at the waypoint selected in the list is displayed. Change the values if you know your values are more accurate than what is currently listed.
	Minimum of each joint: -357°
	Maximum of each joint: +357°





Item	Description		
Use waypoint-specific speed limits	Select when you want to set a specific speed limit of the robot at the selected waypoint instead of using t parametric values shared among all waypoints in the list.		
	The Speed Limits sub-pane launches.		
Speed Limits			
Joint 1, Joint 2,Joint 3	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired speed at the joint at the selected waypoint.		
	Minimum: 1 °/s		
	Maximum: 200 °/s.		
	Important: The desired speed cannot exceed the Safety Joint Speed Limit defined on Safety > Joint Limits.		
Joint 4, Joint 5, Joint 6	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired speed at the joint at the selected waypoint.		
	Minimum: 1 °/s		
	Maximum: 320 °/s		
	Important: The desired speed cannot exceed the Safety Joint Speed Limit defined on Safety > Joint Limits.		
Use waypoint-specific acceleration limits	Select when you want to set a specific speed limit on the robot at the selected waypoint instead of using the parametric values shared among all waypoints in the list.		
	The Acceleration Limits sub-pane launches.		
Acceleration Limits			
Acceleration Limits for Joint 1, Joint 2,Joint 3, Joint 4, Joint 5, Joint 6	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired acceleration at each joint for the selected waypoint.		
	Minimum: 1 °/s ²		
	Maximum: 600°/s ²		

Constraint parameters

Each Waypoints tile can have its own set of global speed and acceleration limits.

The global speed and acceleration limits do not apply to the waypoints that have waypointspecific speed and acceleration limits defined on the **Constraints** pane.

The constraints available depend on the type of waypoint: Cartesian or angular.

Waypoints	Constraints	Custom Frame	
Speed Limits		•	
ICP Translation Speed :	-•		189.2 mm/s
CP Rotation Speed : —	•		150 °/s
Acceleration Limits			
CP Translation Accelerat	tion :	•	5000 mm/s²
CD Detetion Acceleration	ı:		600 °/s²

Figure 186: Constraints for Cartesian waypoints

Table 91: Constraints for Cartesian waypoints

tion
e slider to, or enter, the desired translation or the <i>TCP</i> at the selected waypoint.
ım: 10 mm/s
um: 2000 mm/s
e slider to, or enter, the desired rotational or the <i>TCP</i> at the selected waypoint.
ım: 1 °/s
um: 600 °/s
<u>า</u> เ



Item	Description
TCP Translation Acceleration	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired translation acceleration for the <i>TCP</i> at the selected waypoint.
	Minimum: 10 mm/s ²
	Maximum: 12,000 mm/s ²
TCP Rotation Acceleration	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired orientation acceleration for the <i>TCP</i> at the selected waypoint.
	Minimum: 1 °/s ²
	Maximum: 1500 °/s ² .

Some waypoints have	e specific limits. (1, 2)			
Speed Limits				
✓ Same limit for	all joints			
Joints 1-6 :	•		60	°/s
Acceleration Limite				
Acceleration Limits				
	all joints			
✓ Same limit for	all joints		200	°/S ²
Acceleration Limits Same limit for a Joints 1-6 :	all joints		200	°/S ²
Same limit for	all joints		200	°/S²

Figure 187: Constraints applied to all joints of an angular waypoint



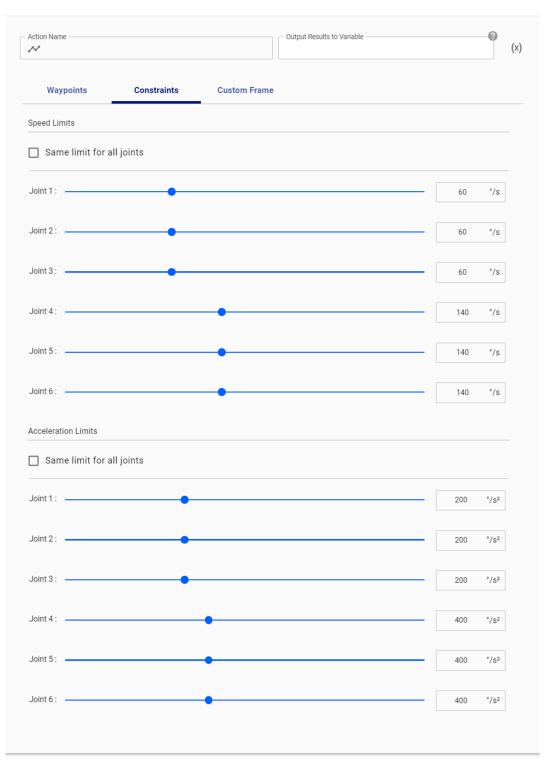


Figure 188: Constraints applied to specific joints of an angular waypoint

Table 92: Constraints for angular waypoints

 Item
 Description

 Speed Limits sub-pane

269



Item	Description	
Same limit for all joints	Select when you want to constrain all six join the same speed.	
Joints 1-6	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired speed for al joints at the selected waypoint.	
	 Tip: A message launches when the speed you select exceeds the safety speed defined on Safety > Joint Limits > Speed Limits for one or more joints. Image: Same inst for all pints in the speed limits override all other speed limits. Minimum: 1 °/s 	
Same limit for all joints	Deselect when you want to constrain one or more specific joints by a specific speed.	
	Tip: A message launches under each joint where the speed you select exceeds the safety speed defined on Safety > Joint Limits > Speed Limits.	

Item	Description		
Joint 1 Joint 2 Joint 3	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired speed for the specific joint at the selected waypoint.		
	Tip: A message launches when the speed you select exceeds the safety speed defined on Safety > Joint Limits > Speed Limits for the specified joint. Similar State St		
	Remember: Safety speed limits override all other speed limits.		
	Minimum: 1 °/s		
	Maximum: 200 °/s		
Joint 4Joint 5Joint 6	Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired speed for the specific joint at the selected waypoint.		
	 Tip: A message launches when the speed you select exceeds the safety speed defined on Safety > Joint Limits > Speed Limits for the specified joint. 		
	Same limit for all joints Joints 16 : Joints 1.2, 3 are limited to 100 7/s Joints 4, 5, 6 are limited to 200 7/s		
	Remember: Safety speed limits override all other speed limits.		
	Minimum: 1 °/s		
	Maximum: 320 °/s		
Acceleration Limits sub-pane			
Same limit for all joints	Select when you want to constrain all six joints by the same acceleration.		



Description
Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired speed for all joints at the selected waypoint.
Minimum: 1 °/s
Maximum: 1000 °/s
Deselect when you want to constrain one or more specific joints by a specific acceleration.
Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired speed for the specific joint at the selected waypoint.
Minimum: 1 °/s
Maximum: 600 °/s
Drag the slider to, or enter, the desired speed for the specific joint at the selected waypoint.
Minimum: 1 °/s
Maximum: 1000 °/s

Custom Frame parameters

In certain scenarios, it is easier to program waypoints in relation to a specific pose.

The specific pose can be used as a frame of reference for any waypoint in the list. The frame of reference for the custom frame definition must be **Base**.



Tip: The only debugging tool available for a custom frame is UPDATE.



Action Name		Output Results to Variable		()	
Waypoints	Constrain	ts Custom Frame	_		
Custom Point of Refer	ence (x)				UPDATE [+]
All Cartesian Offset wa	aypoints will be rela	ative to this pose. This pose need	ds to be in the Base reference fra	me.	
All Cartesian Offset wa - x 0		ative to this pose. This pose need	- Theta X	° (x)	
_ x	mm		O Theta Y		

Debug tools for waypoints

To simplify creating the perfect waypoints in a program, a few debug tools are available.

Any settings made on individual waypoints with the debug tools are not valid during an actual run of the full program.

Go-to Options Play All Waypoints 👻	Custom Range	•	
Waypoints			
Some waypoints have spec	cific limits. (2)		
Waypoint #1			↑ ↓ Ξ
Waypoint #2	SET AS SINGLE GO-TO	SET AS FIRST GO-TO	SET AS LAST GO-TO
+			

Figure 189: Tools for debugging waypoints

Table 93: Tools for debugging waypoints

Item	Description
Go-To Options	Play All Waypoints
	Play all waypoints listed in the
	Waypoints tile.
	Play Custom Range
	Play only the waypoints within the
	range defined in Custom Range





Item	Description
Custom Range	Enter the start and end waypoints.
	For example, if 6 waypoints are defined in a tile and you want to investigate only from waypoint #2 and want to end at waypoint #5, you would enter the range as 2-5.
	Note: The Custom Range field can be used only when Play Custom Range is selected from Go-To Options.
SET AS A SINGLE GO-TO	Tap to set the correct indices in the Go-To Options .
	Click Play () near the Go-To Options to make the arm move.
	Go-to Options changes automatically to Play Custom Range.
	Custom Range displays the index of the waypoint in the list to which the arm automatically moves.
	Warning: Tapping Play () in the Program play area runs the entire program, disregarding the Go-To Options.



KINOVA

Item	Description
SET AS FIRST GO-TO	Tap to set the correct indices in the Go-To Options .
	Click Play () near the Go-To Options to make the arm move.
	Go-to Options changes automatically to Play Custom Range.
	Custom Range displays the index of the waypoint selected as the first waypoint to which the arm automatically moves.
	When the last go-to waypoint is not set explicitly, the range ends with the index of the last waypoint in the list.
	When the last go-to waypoint is set explicitly, the range ends with the index of the waypoint selected as the last go-to.
	The index of the waypoint defined as the first go- to must be smaller than the index of any waypoint that is defined as the last go-to.
	Warning: Tapping Play () in the Program play area runs the entire program, disregarding the Go-To Options.



Item	Description	
SET AS LAST GO-TO	Tap to set the correct indices in the Go-To Options .	
	Click Play (🗅) near the Go-To Options to make the	
	arm move.	
	Go-to Options changes automatically to Play Custom Range.	
	When the first go-to waypoint is not set explicitly, Custom Range begins with the first index of waypoints in the list.	
	When the first go-to waypoint is set explicitly, the range begins with the index of the waypoint selected as the first go-to.	
	Custom Range ends with the index of the waypoin selected as the last waypoint to which the arm automatically moves.	
	The index of the waypoint defined as the last go- to must be smaller than the index of any waypoin that is defined as the first go-to.	
	Note: It is possible to have waypoints listed after the last go-to waypoint in the Waypoints list, but those waypoints do not end up in the range unless the range is altered to include the new last waypoint.	
	Warning: Tapping Play () in the Program play area runs the entire program, disregarding the Go-To Options.	
UPDATE	Tap to update the orientation or pose of the arm automatically with the actual orientation or pose of the arm at the currently selected waypoint.	



276

ltem	Description
	Tap PLAY from the Waypoints sub-pane to check the Cartesian poses and orientation of the arm at each of the locations in the Waypoints list.
	<i>Tip:</i> Available only in Hold-to-Run mode when you are testing the waypoints for the program you are creating.

Industrial I/O: tiles

The Industrial I/O plugin has a few tiles that can be used in programs.

Table 94: Tiles that belong to Industrial I/O

Tile	Tile name	Description
	Read Input	Reads a signal from an Industrial input channel and stores it in a variable for later use.
Set Output	Set Output	Sends a signal on a desired industrial output channel.
Wait for Input	Wait for Input	Pauses a program until a signal is received on a specific input channel or until a timeout is triggered.

Industrial I/O: Read Input tile parameters

The **Read Input** tile is an Industrial I/O tile. When you drag it into an available tile in the **Sequence editor**, the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically to expose the entities of **Read Input** that can be configured.

Use **Read Input** to configure the type of input that needs to be used at that point in the program.



Action Name Output Results to Variable Q	(x)	
Type Digital		•
Name DI_0		•

Figure 190: The Tile configuration when Read Input is the current tile

The **Type**

Table 95: Industrial I/O Read Input parameters

Item	Description
Туре	Select one of the available read input types.
	• Digital
	• Analog
	• Wrist Digital
	• Wrist Analog
Name	Select the name of the available input of the chosen type as defined by the Industrial I/O plugin configuration.
	The content depends on the selected read
	input type.
Туре	Corresponding Name choices





Item	Description
Digital	Select one of the user-defined names from the list of digital inputs.
	• DI_0
	• DI_1
	• DI_2
	• DI_3
	• DI_4
	• DI_5
	• DI_6
	• DI_7
Analog	Select one of the user-defined names from the list
	of analog inputs.
	· AIO_0
	・ AIO_1
	• AIO_2
	· AIO_3
Wrist Digital	Select one of the user-defined names from the list of wrist digital inputs.
	WRIST_DIGITAL_IO1WRIST_DIGITAL_IO2
	WRIST_DIGITAL_I02 WRIST_DIGITAL_I03
	WRIST_DIGITAL_IO3 WRIST_DIGITAL_IO4
Wrist Analog	Select one of the user-defined names from the list
	of wrist analog inputs.
	• WRIST_AOI_1
	WRIST_AOI_2

If the name of the pin that is selected is not configured to be an input, an error message displays directly in the **Tile configuration** pane.

Example:

This pin is not configured as input.



Industrial I/O: Set Output tile parameters

The **Set Output** tile is an Industrial I/O tile. When you drag it into an available tile in the **Sequence editor**, the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically to expose the entities of **Set Output** that can be configured.

Use **Set Output** to configure the type of input that needs to be used at that point in the program.

Action Name Set Output	Non-blocking	
– Туре –		
Digital		•
ettings		
Name		
DO_1		•
- State		
		-

Figure 191: The Tile configuration for when Set Output is the current tile and Digital is selected

Set Output	Non-blocking	
Type Analog		-
AIO_0		-
- Unit		-
2.7		

Figure 192: The Tile configuration when Set Output is the current tile and Analog is selected





Action Name	Non-blocking	
Type Wrist analog		•
Name		•
Unit Current		•
Current :	25	mA (X)

Figure 193: The Tile configuration when Set Output is the current tile and Wrist Analog is selected

Item	Description
Туре	Select one of the available set output types.
	• Digital
	• Analog
	• Wrist Digital
	Wrist Analog
Name	Select the name of the available input of the chosen type as defined by the Industrial I/O plugin configuration.
	The content depends on the selected read
	input type.
Parameters for the output Type Digital and the T	ype Wrist Digital
State	When the selected output channel is in the selected state, your program resumes.
	• High
	• Low

Table 96: Industrial I/O Set Output parameters



Item	Description			
Parameters for the output Type Analog and the Type Wrist Analog				
Unit	Displays the unit that is configured for the pin.			
	 Note: The unit can only be changed from the Industrial I/O plugin Configurations pane. 			
Current	Use the slider or enter the maximum current that the output can reach.			
	Range: Range: 0 to 25 mA			
Voltage	Use the slider or enter the maximum voltage that the output can reach.			
	Range: Range: 0 - 11 V			

If the name of the pin that is selected is not configured to be an input, an error message displays directly in the **Tile configuration** pane.

Example:

This pin is not configured as output.

Industrial I/O: Wait for Input tile parameters

The **Wait for Input** tile is an Industrial I/O tile. When you drag it into an available tile in the **Sequence editor**, the **Tile configuration** changes dynamically to expose the entities of **Wait for Input** that can be configured.

Use Wait for Input to pause a program until a signal is sent on an industrial input channel.



Action Name		
Type Digital		•
Timeout	s (X)	
Name		•
State		•

Figure 194: The Tile configuration when Wait for Input is the current tile and the Input Type is either Digital or Wrist Digital



☑ Wait for Input					
^{Туре} — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — — —				 ,	•
Timeout	S	(x)			
Name					•
Unit					•
Condition =					•
oltage : 👝					

Figure 195: The Tile configuration when Wait for Input is the current tile and the Input Type is either Analog or Wrist Analog

Table 97: Industrial I/O Wait For Input parameters

Item	Description
Туре	Select one of the available set output types.
	• Digital
	• Analog
	Wrist Digital
	Wrist Analog
Timeout (s)	Force the program to stop running if it must wait the number of seconds entered.



Item	Description			
Name	Select the name of the available input of the chosen type as defined by the Industrial I/O plug configuration. The content depends on the selected read input type.			
Parameters specific to Digital and Wrist Digital				
State	When the selected input channel is in the selected state, your program resumes.			
	・ High ・ Low			
Parameters specific to Analog and Wrist Analog				
Condition	When the input timeout meets the selected condition, the program resumes.			
	· == · >			
	• >=			
	· < · <=			
Current	Use the slider or enter the maximum current that the output can reach.			
	Range: Range: 0 to 25 mA			
Voltage	Use the slider or enter the maximum voltage that the output can reach.			
	Range: Range: 0 - 10 V			

Hand Guiding panel

Hand Guiding takes into account external forces and torque feedback from the environment of the robot.

When you press and hold the Wrist enabling device in the middle position, the **Hand Guiding** in the Robot control panel is selected and the **Enabling Device** icon illuminates blue.







Figure 196: Hand Guiding button in the panel

Figure 197: Enabling Device icon

There are two types of motion in Hand Guiding mode.

• **Cartesian**: The tool moves according to the force and torque applied on the wrist, as measured by the built-in force torque sensor.

Enabling

Device

• Joint: The joints of the robot rotate according to the external torques applied at the joint.

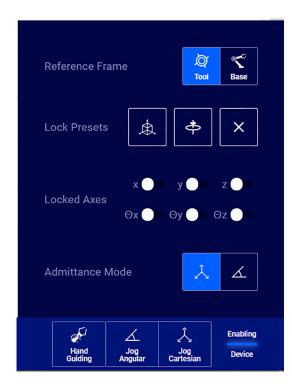


Figure 198: Hand Guiding panel

In this mode, usually you are interacting directly with the arm. However, some actions can be performed from the panel.

- Select the frame of reference as either **Tool** or **Base** when locking axes.
- Use **Lock Presets** to control the Hand Guiding constraints in *Cartesian* translation and rotation admittance mode.



Locks all x, y, and z axes. Cartesian movement is constrained. Only rotations are possible.







Locks all θx , θy , and θz coordinates. Rotations are constrained. Only movement in Cartesian translation are possible.



Cancels the selected lock preset. There are no constraints on the admittance mode.

Any combination of zero or more axes, and zero or more angles, can be selected from Locked
 Axes to control the Hand Guiding movement with greater precision.

Related topics

Mode: Hand Guiding on page 118

Jog Cartesian panel

To control the position and orientation of the *end effector* of the robot, use the **Jog Cartesian** panel in Kortex Web App.



Important: Jog Cartesian is accessible only when the *teach pendant enabling device* or an external *enabling device* is held in the middle position.

Tap Jog Cartesian in the Robot control panel to access the Jog Cartesian panel.

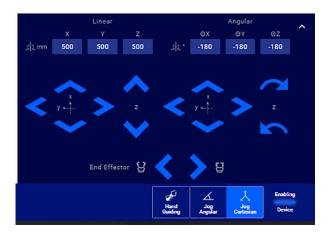




Figure 199: Jog Cartesian button in the panel



Related topics Mode: Manual Jog on page 115

Translation and rotation from the Jog Cartesian panel

Control linear and angular motion of the tool by using the Jog Cartesian panel.

There are two sets of virtual joysticks.

• The linear joystick applies a translational motion to the TCP.



• The angular joystick applies a rotational motion to the *TCP* with respect to the current position.



Figure 201: Controls for the Cartesian movement of the arm

Each set of virtual joysticks features a 2-axis joystick for controlling the x and y axes, and a 1-axis joystick to control in the z-axis.

When you tap on the controls, the values are displayed for the current position (x, y, z) and orientation (θ x, θ y, θ z) of the end effector.



Figure 202: Values of the position of the arm



Note: The orientation representation uses a z-y-x Tait-Bryan intrinsic convention.

Additional settings

Reference frames, linear speeds, and *angular* speeds are not modified as often as other *Cartesian* settings, but can be modified in the **Jog Cartesian** panel.

Angular OX OY OZ -180 -180 -180

There is an up arrow in the upper right corner.

Figure 203: Jog Cartesian panel up arrow

Tapping it unveils additional settings available in Jog Cartesian mode.

- speed control
- reference frame selection



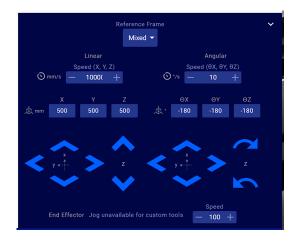


Figure 204: Additional settings in the Jog Cartesian panel

The linear speeds are measured in mm/s and the angular speeds in °/s. Configure the linear and angular speeds for the motion.

The Cartesian velocity of the TCP is specified in one of three reference frame conventions.

- **Mixed**: linear with the *base* being the frame of reference; angular with the tool being the frame of reference
- Tool: linear and angular with the base being the frame of reference
- Base: linear and angular with the base being the frame of reference



Figure 205: Available frames of reference in the Jog Cartesian panel

Jog Angular panel

To control the joint by joint movement of the robot, use the **Jog Angular** panel in *Kortex Web App*.

With the **Jog Angular** panel, control the robot joint angles and the *end effector* using a mouse or *teach pendant*.

Tap Jog Angular in the Robot control panel to access the Jog Angular panel.







Figure 206: Jog Angular button in the panel



The joint angles are controlled through angular velocity. Control the angle of each *actuator*, as well as end effectors. The robot *arm* responds to the virtual *angular* manipulation.



Note: For joints with joint rotation limits, the robot enforces software joint angle limits to prevent these joints from reaching the physical limits. When you control these joints, the software causes the arm joints to stop responding when the limits are reached.

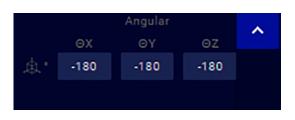
Each angle is measured in degrees. The value displayed is restricted to minus or plus a full rotation; that is, -360° to +360°.

Related topics

Mode: Manual Jog on page 115

Additional settings

Maximum speeds for actuators and fingers are not modified as often as other *angular* settings, but can be modified in the **Jog Angular** panel.



There is an up arrow in the upper right corner.

Figure 208: Jog Angular panel up arrow

Tapping it unveils additional settings available in Jog Angular mode.

- Maximum speed for each actuator
- · Maximum speed for fingers when a gripper is installed







Figure 209: Additional settings in the Jog Angular panel

To control the angle of each *actuator*, use the virtual controls to apply a velocity in the given direction. Increase the angle by tapping the up arrow; decrease the angle by tapping the down arrow. The speed does not exceed the set limit. The angle continues to change as long as the arrows are being used.



Note: The desired joint speeds must be less than the default joint speeds.

Related topics

Robot control panel on page 156

Program creation

The *admin* is responsible for creating programs that can be run safely by *operators*.

It is common practice to create a program using a combination of Hand Guiding, Manual Jog, and *Kortex Web App*. The combination used is a matter of preference. However, there are times when using Hand Guiding and Kortex Web App is the preferred approach, such as when the robot *arm* is approaching a surface.

After the program is debugged and is known to be working as expected, it must be validated. Tap **Validate**.

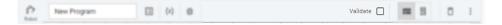


Figure 210: Validate button on the same line as the name of the program on the Program page

Validated programs on the **Programs** page have a green check mark.



= KINOVa			
→ Programs			
Program		Program 🗸	
New Program	:	My Program	:

Figure 211: Example of a validated program

Only validated programs are available to operators.

Creating a program

Every program is unique to the work environment of the robot.

About this task

Teaching trajectories to the robot in a program can be made easier using Hand Guiding mode. Use the Cartesian Hand Guiding mode to leverage the force torque sensor for more sensitive and accurate motion. Use angular Hand Guiding to guide any joint.

Alternatively, use the Visual Programming interface.

Procedure

- 1. Tap Programming > Programs.
- 2. Tap Add (+).
- 3. Drag and drop tiles from the Action menu to the Sequence editor.
- 4. Tap an action tile in the Sequence editor to configures the properties of the action.
- 5. Test the program.
- 6. Tap Validate.

Debug panel overview

It is important to know whether the program is running optimally or suboptimally before it is released to the users. The **Debug** panel launches at the end of the run of a debugging session.



Action					
Input (Input) -		7		•	Program start
Event: Snapshot				•	0s - Hook - Sequencer onPlay (0.001s)
Status: Idle State Property Value				•	0.001s - Hook - Sequencer onStatusChange (0s)
Variables				•	0.001s - Hook - Sequencer onStateChange (0s)
Identifier value home {"angles" [0, -20, 110, 0, 130, 0]} package {"angles" [0, 30, 150, 0, 30, 0]}				•	0.001s - Hook - Action group onPlay (0s)
Stats			Input (Input)	•	0.001s - Action status change - Playing
Statistic Play count	Value 1				0.002s - Action status
Total duration (play + pause)	0.001s				change - Completed
Play duration	0.001s			۰	0.005s - Hook - Sequencer
Pause duration	0s	*			onStateChange (0s)

1 Action Select one of the actions in the drop-down to highlight them in the timeline.

Alternatively, tap on any of the events in the timeline to view the action in the drop-down list.

- 2 Event Event is the action selected from which the debugger is to run.
- 3 Status Status is the mode of operation the robot is in.
- 4 State State lists the different property states and their values during the run of the program.
- 5 Variables Variables are used by the program.
 - · Identifier is the name of the variable.
 - Value is the value of the named variable.
- 6 Stats Statistics are information about the program.
 - (Statistics)
- Play count is the number of times the program is run.
- Total duration (play + pause) is the total of time the program runs, before pauses, before the program ends.
- Play duration is the amount of time the program plays before it ends.
- Pause duration is the amount of time the program is paused.
- Pause count is the number of times the program is paused.
- Failure count is the number of times the program fails.



7 Timeline of The visual timeline of events that occur while the program runs.

Tap on any of the events in the timeline to view information related to that event.

Debugging a program

Determine whether the program is running optimally or suboptimally by using the debugger and the play controls in the Robot control panel.

About this task

events

There must be a program in the **Program** page.

Procedure

1

- 1. Tap Hold-to-Run (.....).
- **2.** Tap **Debug** (**4**).



3. Tap a tile in the Sequence editor from where you want to start debugging.

Tip: It is easier to debug small portions of a program. However, remember to debug from the very beginning of the program as well to make sure the program runs smoothly between sections.

= KINOVA			
Programs > My Program (2082)	954042)		
My Program	🗉 (X) 🅸		
	~		
•		× 1	•

The **Tile configuration** populates with details about the selected action.





Program is ready to use

The robot is ready to be used in its environment and to perform its tasks.

All users can run a program that is validated. There are different ways to run a program.

- Run the program in Automatic mode. This is the most common way of running a program for operators.
- (Admin users only) Run a program in Hold-to-Run mode.

Running a program in Automatic mode

Work in Automatic mode to run a program with little to no intervention.

Before you begin

The program is fully debugged and validated.

About this task

The robot must be on and operational. All users can run a validated program.



Important: To run in Automatic mode, you usually use the ACK button on the *controller* or an external ACK button, and **Acknowledge Automatic Mode** is enabled from **Systems** > **Robot. Acknowledge Automatic Mode** is enabled by default.

It is possible to avoid using the ACK button on the controller.

- Disable the Acknowledge Automatic Mode button on Systems > Robot > Acknowledge Automatic Mode.
- Assign Acknowledgment to one channel on Safety I/Os > Inputs.

🕨 🔹 💠 💷 📕 😳

Procedure

- **1.** Tap **Programming > Programs**.
- 2. Tap the program to select a program to run.
- **3.** Tap Automatic (2).
- 4. Press the ACK button on the controller.
- 5. Tap **>** in the Robot control panel

The program runs at the programmed speed.



Note: At any time in Automatic mode, tap the Program speed control buttons to slow down the speed of the program and to resume its normal speed.

 Image: weight of the second second



Related topics

Mode: Automatic on page 120

Running a program in Hold-to-Run mode

Work in Hold-to-Run mode to run a program knowing that intervention may be required.

Before you begin

The enabling device must be pressed and held in the middle position to run the program.

About this task

The robot must be on and operational. When you run a program in Hold-to-Run mode, you may want to determine whether it needs further debugging or they may want to see how it works either at reduced or normal speeds.

Procedure

- 1. Tap Programming > Programs.
- **2.** Tap the program to select a program to run.
- **3.** Tap Hold-to-Run ().
- **4.** Tap **b** in the Robot control panel.



Note: If the playing speed of the program is more than 250 mm/s, a warning dialog launches. Follow safety measures and confirm before proceeding.

The program runs at the programmed speed.



Note: At any time in Hold-to-Run mode, tap the Program speed control buttons to slow down the speed of the program and to resume its normal speed.

5. Tap Reduced (🚨) or Normal (🚢) speed.



6. Tap **b** in the Robot control panel.

When you operate Hold-to-Run mode at **Normal** safety speeds, you can change the speed limit of the *TCP* translation speed while the program is running.



Related topics

Mode: Hold-to-Run on page 119



Diagnostics

You can view potential issues in any part of the robot from the diagnostic pages.

The pages are found under the **Diagnostics** menu.

- Status: displays the results of all the built-in tests
- Monitoring: displays live information from the sensors about the robot, divided into four groups

Faults identified by the diagnostics tool, as well as normal operating events, generate messages that are displayed as notifications and can be found in the **Events** page. Access all events

through Kortex Web App by tapping the **Notifications** icon (

Built-in self tests

Kortex Web App displays notifications, such as a robot component not functioning properly, on the **Status** page.

The Status page displays an overview of the status of each component in the system.

There are several ways to access the **Status** page.

Tap the Robot status icon (💶 👶 🔋) and tap VIEW ALL DIAGNOSTICS.



Tap Status from Quick Menu.





Safety	~					
	*					
Q Diagnostics	^					
İ Status						
Monitoring						
😥 Systems	~					
				SAFETY CHECKS 00 00 00 00	зим 🏚 🗳	
KINDVƏ Status Safety Functions	Controller	Actuators	Scu		^{sum} 🌲 😝	
Status	Controller	Actuators	SCN	00 00 00 00	^{sum} 🏚 😝	
Status	Controller	Actuators	SCN	00 00 00 00	вим 🏚	
Status Safety Functions Emergency Stop	Controller	Actuators	Scn	00 00 00 00	^{sum} 🏚	
Status Safety Functions Emergency Stop Joint Position	Controller	Actuators	SCU	00 00 00 00	вим 🏚	
Status Safety Functions Emergency Stop Joint Position Joint Speed	Controller	Actuators	SCN	00 00 00 00	^{SUM} 🏚	
Status Safety Functions Emergency Stop Joint Position Joint Speed Monitored Stop	Controller	Actuators	SCU	00 00 00 00	зим 🌲	

Figure 212: Status page

Auto

Hold-to-Run

The page is divided into several panes.

- Safety Functions
- Controller
- Actuators
- SCU
- Wrist

Status of safety functions

The safety functions that are listed on the **Safety Functions** pane on the **Status** page are the same safety functions listed with their current state.

Safety functions are monitored by the SCU. The state of each safety function is displayed.



298



Hand Jog Jog Guiding Angular Cartesiar

- A green circle with a check mark (♥) beside the name of the safety function indicates that safety function has no events.
- A red octagon () beside the name of the safety function indicates that safety function has errors, or events.

≡	KINOVA
<u>!</u>	Status
•	Safety Functions
\bigcirc	Emergency Stop
0	Joint Position
	Joint Speed
	Monitored Stop
0	Protection Zone
\bigcirc	Protective Stop
0	TCP & Elbow Speed

Figure 213: Status of safety functions

Related topics

List of safety functions on page 54 SF01 Emergency stop on page 55 SF02 Protective stop on page 56 SF03 Joint position monitoring on page 56 SF04 Joint speed monitoring on page 57 SF05 Monitored stop on page 58 SF06 Protection zone monitoring on page 58 SF07 TCP and elbow speed monitoring on page 59

Status of the controller

The status of each part of the *controller* is displayed on the **Controller** pane on the **Status** page.

The status of the controller summarizes the state of the entire robot.



On the **Controller** pane, you can search for different issues or view only what is failing.

Q Search	Only show failures
----------	--------------------

Figure 214: Search and filter on Controller pane

Some status have an tooltip (O) beside them. Tap them to view the thresholds associated with the status.

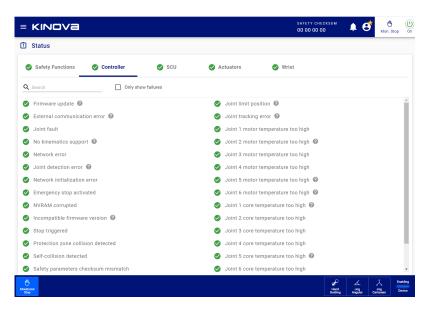


Figure 215: Status page of the controller

Each controller status displays one of its two states.

- A green circle with a check mark (🕙) beside the status indicates that controller status is fine.
- A red octagon () beside the name of the controller status indicates that status has errors;

more information may be available by tapping the Notifications icon (\square) .

The **Controller** pane displays all the status that are being monitored, including internal variables. Some of the internal variables cannot be accessed by users; the variables may be associated with hardware problems.Contact support at support@kinova.ca

Table 98: Listing of controller status

Status	Not addressable by users	Addressable by users
Firmware update failure		X
External communication error		X





Status	Not addressable by users	Addressable by users
Joint fault		X
No kinematics support	х	
Network error	х	
Joint detection error	х	
Network initialization error	Х	
Emergency stop activated		X
NVRAM corrupted	Х	
Incompatible firmware version		X
Stop triggered		X
Protection zone collision detected		Х
Self-collision detected		Х
Safety parameters checksum mismatch		x
Hard Stop command failed		x
Singularity error detected		X
Joint limit position		x
Joint tracking error		X
Joint 1-6 motor temperature too high		x
Joint 1-6 core temperature too high		x
Serial number mismatch between arm and calibration file		x
Actuator model invalid	х	

When you are not able to intervene with a status, you can attempt to recover on your own before contacting support.

1. Take note of the exact error along with the conditions that seem to have triggered it.



Tip: When a fault triggers, a message launches in Kortex Web App that provides information.



- Name of the fault
- Error code
- Explanation of what can trigger the fault
- · What can be done to fix the problem
- **2.** Reboot the controller.
- **3.** Re-install the *firmware update package (SWU)* if the error persists.
- 4. If the problem persists, contact support at support@kinova.ca.

Related topics

Protection zones on page 77

Firmware update

What does Firmware update monitor?

Firmware update failure monitors whether the latest *firmware* uploaded to the robot is installed properly.

Causes of the trigger

- Communication is faulty when the SWU package is uploaded to the robot.
- Firmware is corrupted during its initial download from the Kinova Artifactory server.

Procedure

- 1. Download the latest version of the firmware from our Artifactory server.
- 2. Restart the firmware installation.

Incompatible firmware version

What does Incompatible firmware version monitor?

Incompatible firmware version monitors whether the *firmware* installed on the controller is compatible with the robot.

Cause of the trigger

A SWU package meant for another model of the robot may have been installed on the controller.

Procedure

- 1. Download the latest version of the firmware from our Artifactory server.
- 2. Restart the firmware installation.



Joint detection error

What does Joint detection error monitor?

Joint detection error monitors whether the number of *actuators* detected by the *controller* is the same as its expected configuration.

Cause of the trigger

Communication packets may be lost between the internal devices of the robot.

Procedure

- 1. Take note of the exact error along with the conditions that seem to have triggered it.
- 2. Reboot the controller.
- 3. Re-install the SWU package if the problem persists.
- 4. If the problem persists, contact support at support@kinova.ca.

Joint fault

What does Joint fault monitor?

Joint fault monitors all actuators to determine whether any of them are currently in a fault state.

Cause of the trigger

There are multiple reasons for actuators being in fault.

Procedure

- 1. Tap Actuators.
- 2. Search Joint.
- 3. Identify the *actuator* in fault and its trigger.

Related topics Status of the actuators on page 306 Status of the safety actuators

No kinematics support

What does No kinematics support monitor?

No kinematics support monitors whether the *controller* can find the kinematic information to control the *arm* properly.



Cause of the trigger

The files that contain the information in the file system of the controller may be corrupted.

Procedure

- 1. Take note of the exact error along with the conditions that seem to have triggered it.
- 2. Reboot the controller.
- 3. Re-install the SWU package if the problem persists.
- **4.** If the problem persists, contact support at support@kinova.ca.

Maximum ambient temperature reached

What does Maximum SCU Board temperature monitor?

Maximum SCU Board temperature reached monitors the temperature of the SCU board.

Cause of the trigger

- The room where the *controller* is installed may be too warm.
- There is not enough space behind the controller for its fan to disperse its internal heat properly; the temperature close to the controller is warmer than the actual temperature of the room.

Remedy

Make sure the controller has enough room to dissipate heat properly and that it operates under the recommended conditions. **Related topics**

Considerations before installing the controller on page 134

Maximum core temperature reached

What does Maximum core temperature reached monitor?

Maximum core temperature reached monitors the temperature within the core of the *controller*. It must not exceed 75 °C.

Cause of the trigger

The fan within the controller is not able to dissipate heat efficiently enough.

Procedure

- Make sure the air filters on the controller are clean.
- Make sure the fan is spinning freely.



• Make sure the controller has enough room to dissipate heat properly.

Related topics

Considerations before installing the controller on page 134

Maximum current reached

What does Maximum current reached monitor?

Maximum current reached monitors whether the electrical current pulled by the *controller* stays below a certain amount.

Cause of the trigger

The instantaneous power pulled by the robot for its motion in addition to the power required by the components of the controller may exceed the limits of the hardware.

Procedure

- Avoid having computationally expensive algorithms running on the controller when the robot has to apply high torques if possible.
- Reduce the force or velocity output by the robot during its trajectory.

Network error

What does Network error monitor?

Network error monitors whether the controller can find all the expected devices on its network.

Cause of the trigger

Communication packets may be lost between the internal devices of the robot.

Procedure

- 1. Take note of the exact error along with the conditions that seem to have triggered it.
- 2. Reboot the controller.
- **3.** Re-install the *SWU* package if the problem persists.
- **4.** If the problem persists, contact support at support@kinova.ca.

Procedure

- 1. Reboot the controller.
- 2. Re-install the SWU package if the problem persists.
- 3. Contact support at support@kinova.ca



© 2023 Kinova inc. All rights reserved.

Self-collision detected

What does Self-collision detected monitor?

Self-collision detected monitors whether non-consecutive robot links are at risk of entering in contact with each other.

Cause

Manual control and trajectories can drive the robot in configurations where self-collisions can occur.

Procedure

- Modify your trajectory accordingly when it is clear from observing the pose of the robot which links are at risk of entering in contact.
- Validate the size of your Tool Sphere in the Protection Zones page.

Related topics

Protection zones on page 77

Status of the actuators

The status of each actuator is displayed on the Actuators pane of the Status page.

The status of the actuators summarizes the state of the actuators.

On the Actuators pane, you can search for different issues or view only what is failing.

 ${\sf Q}$ Search

] Only show failures

Figure 216: Search and filter on Actuators pane

Some status have an information icon beside them. Tap them to view the thresholds associated with the status.



= KINOVA	SAFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00 Mon. Stop
1 Status	
Safety Functions Controller	Vrist
Actuator 1	~
Actuator 2	~
Actuator 3	Ŷ
Actuator 4	~
Actuator 5	Ŷ
Actuator 6	Ŷ
Actuator Safety MCU 1	~
Actuator Safety MCU 2	v
Actuator Safety MCU 3	~
Monitored Stop	Fand Log Cartesian Device

Figure 217: Status page of the actuators when all actuator status are good

Each actuator pane displays one of two states, depending on the overall state of all its status.

- A green circle with a check mark () beside the actuator indicates that all status for that actuator is fine.
- A red octagon (
) beside the actuator indicates that at least one status of the actuator has errors. More information is available by expanding the pane and possible recovery steps may be available by tapping the Notifications icon (
).



Status						
Safety Functions	Controller	Actuators	ø	SCU	🔮 Wrist	
Actuator 1						^
Search	Only sho	w failures				
Startup self-tests tim	ed out 🔞		\checkmark	VMON 1.8 V	undervoltage 🕜	
MCU core general pu	rpose registers self-test	0	\checkmark	VMON 1.2 V	overvoltage 🕜	
MCU core arithmetic	functions self-test 🔞		\checkmark	VMON 1.2 V	undervoltage 🕜	
MCU core multiplier f	unctions self-test 🔞		\bigcirc	VREF 2.5 V o	vervoltage	
MCU core control flor	w instructions self-test		\bigcirc	VREF 2.5 V u	ndervoltage 🕜	
MCU core load store	unit self-test		\bigcirc	Motor overcu	ırrent	
MCU core shift rotate	functions self-test 🕜		\bigcirc	Motor curren	t sense redundancy error 🔞	
MCU core stack point	er self-test 🔞		\checkmark	Motor phase	s current unbalanced 🔞	
MCU core pipeline fu	nctions self-test		\bigcirc	Motor encod	er configuration failed	
MCU core FPU regist	ers bank self-test		\checkmark	Motor encod	er fault detected	
MCU core FPU single	precision functions self	f-test	\bigcirc	Motor encod	er error pin asserted	
MCU core cache man	agement logic self-test	0	\checkmark	Motor encod	er SPI QEI position disagreement 🔞	
MCU RAM self-test	9		\checkmark	Joint encode	er configuration failed 🔞	
Joint position followi	ng error		\checkmark	Joint encode	er fault detected 🔞	
Joint maximum veloc	ity		\bigcirc	Joint encode	er diagnostic pin asserted 🔞	
Joint position limit hi	gh		\checkmark	Joint encode	r SPI QEI position disagreement	
Joint position limit lo	w		\bigcirc	Encoders po	sition disagreement	
Joint maximum torqu	e		\checkmark	Motor housir	ng temp sensor I2C error	
Motor driver configur	ation failed		\bigcirc	Motor housir	ng temperature too high	
Motor driver fault pin	asserted 🕐			Motor housir	ng temperature too low	
Motor driver VDS ove	rcurrent		\bigcirc	Core tempera	ature too high	
Motor driver gate driv	rer fault 🔞			Core tempera	ature too low	
Motor driver PSU und	ervoltage lockout 🔞			EEPROM I2C	error	
Motor driver gate driv	er undervoltage lockout			EEPROM cor	rupted 🕜	
Motor driver thermal	shutdown 🕜			FRAM I2C er	ror	
Motor driver sense ar	nplifier overcurrent		\bigcirc	FRAM corrup	ted	
Brake driver fault pin	asserted 🕜			XCOM safety	MCU not detected	
Brake not releasing				XCOM config	juration failed 👔	
Brake circuit current	out of range 🔞		\checkmark	XCOM SPI co	ommunication 🕐	
Brake circuit unexpec	ted voltage 🔞		\bigcirc	Motor driver	enable pin disagreement 🔞	
Brake release motion	out of range		\checkmark	Brake driver	enable pin disagreement	
VMON 48 V overvolta	ge		\bigcirc	VMON 48V d	isagreement	
VMON 48 V undervol	age 🕜			Motor housir	ng temperature disagreement	
VMON 5 V overvoltag	e			Joint positio	n disagreement 🕜	
VMON 5 V undervolta	ge			Motor positio	on disagreement 🕐	
VMON 3.3 V overvolt	age 🕜		\bigcirc	Joint velocity	y disagreement	
VMON 3.3 V undervo	tage 🕜			Motor veloci	ty disagreement	
VMON 2.8 V overvolt	age			Motor curren	t disagreement	
VMON 2.8 V undervo	tage 🕜			Safe commu	nication	
VMON 1.8 V overvolt	age			Independent	or window watchdog reset occurred	

Figure 218: Status page of the actuators with an actuator pane expanded



The **Actuators** pane displays all the status that are being monitored, including internal variables. Some of the internal variables cannot be accessed by users; the variables may be associated with hardware problems.

Each safety MCU actuator status is listed separately for each actuator.

Table 99: Listing of status of each actuator safety MCU

Status	Status
Startup self-test timed out	VMON 48V disagreement
VMON 48V overvoltage	Motor housing temperature disagreement
VMON 48V undervoltage	Joint position disagreement
VREF 2.5V overvoltage	Motor position disagreement
VREF 2.5V undervoltage	Joint velocity disagreement
Motor current sense disagreement	Motor velocity disagreement
Motor encoder error pin asserted	Motor current disagreement
Joint encoder diagnostic pin asserted	Safe communication
Encoders position disagreement	Independent or window watchdog reset occurred
Motor housing temp sensor I2C error	MCU core general purpose registers
Motor housing temperature too high	MCU core arithmetic functions
Motor housing temperature too low	MCU core multiplier functions
Core temperature too high	MCU core control flow instructions
Core temperature too low	MCU core load store unit
Emulated EEPROM corrupted	MCU core shift rotate functions
XCOM SPI communication failure	MCU core stack pointer
Motor driver enable pin disagreement	MCU core pipeline functions
Brake driver enable pin disagreement	MCU RAM BIST fault

When you are not able to intervene with a status, you can attempt to recover on your own before contacting support.

1. Take note of the exact error along with the conditions that seem to have triggered it.



Tip: When a fault triggers, a message launches in Kortex Web App that provides information.



- Name of the fault
- Error code
- Explanation of what can trigger the fault
- · What can be done to fix the problem
- 2. Reboot the controller.
- **3.** Re-install the *SWU* if the error persists.
- 4. If the problem persists, contact support at support@kinova.ca.

Related topics

Joint fault on page 303

Remedy for MCU firmware corruption

Many different errors of the status of the *actuators* can be caused by corrupted *firmware* on the *MCU*.

About this task

Take the same remedial steps for each of the actuator status.

- Startup self-tests timed out
- MCU core general purpose registers self-test failure
- *MCU* core arithmetic functions self-test failure
- *MCU* core multiplier functions self-test failure
- MCU core control flow instructions self-test failure
- MCU core load store unit self-test failure
- MCU core stack pointer self-test failure
- MCU core pipeline functions self-test failure
- MCU core FPU registers bank self-test failure
- MCU core FPU single precision functions self-test failure

Procedure

- 1. Take note of the exact error along with the conditions that seem to have triggered it.
- 2. Reboot the controller.
- **3.** Re-install the *SWU* if the error persists.
- 4. If the problem persists, contact support at support@kinova.ca.



Emergency stop button signals disagreement

What does Emergency stop button signals disagreement monitor?

Emergency stop button signals disagreement monitors whether the signals coming from the emergency stop button are in alignment with the state of the robot.

Cause

The emergency stop button may not be fully engaged or fully released.

Remedy

Procedure

- 1. Make sure the button is either fully engaged or fully released.
- 2. Take note of the exact error along with the conditions that seem to have triggered it.
- 3. Reboot the controller.
- 4. Re-install the SWU package if the problem persists.
- 5. If the problem persists, contact support at support@kinova.ca.

Safety input signals disagreement

What does Safety input signals disagreement monitor?

Safety input signals disagreement monitors whether each of the safety I/O signals are in alignment with the state of the robot.

Cause

The connections on the I/O panel may be loose.

Remedy

Procedure

- 1. Make sure the connections on the I/O panel are secure.
- 2. Take note of the exact error along with the conditions that seem to have triggered it.
- 3. Reboot the controller.
- 4. Re-install the SWU package if the problem persists.
- 5. If the problem persists, contact support at support@kinova.ca.



Core temperature too high

What does Core temperature too high monitor?

Core temperature too high monitors whether the core temperature is below a specific temperature.

Cause of the trigger

Trajectories with sustained high torques generate heat at a faster pace than it is dissipated.

Remedy

Leave the robot at rest and let it cool down. If a continuous program is triggering this fault, consider modifying the trajectory to reduce the duration of high applied torques.

Core temperature too low

What does Core temperature too low monitor?

Core temperature too low monitors whether the core temperature is above a specific temperature.

Cause of the trigger

Low internal temperature is a consequence of low ambient temperature.

Remedy

Make sure the robot is operating in the recommended ambient temperature.

Motor housing temperature too high

What does Motor housing temperature too high monitor?

Motor housing temperature too high monitors whether the temperature of the motor housing is below a specific temperature.

Cause of the trigger

Trajectories with sustained high torques generate heat at a faster pace than it is dissipated.

Remedy

Leave the robot at rest and let it cool down. If a continuous program is triggering this fault, consider modifying the trajectory to reduce the duration of high applied torques.



Motor housing temperature too low

What does Motor housing temperature too low monitor?

Motor housing temperature too low monitors whether the temperature of the motor housing is over a specific temperature.

Cause of the trigger

Low internal temperature is a consequence of low ambient temperature.

Remedy

Make sure the robot is operating in the recommended ambient temperature.

Status of the wrist

The status of each part of the *wrist* is displayed on the **Wrist** pane on the **Status** page.

The status of the wristsummarizes the state of the wrist.

On the Wrist pane, you can search for different issues or view only what is failing.

Q	Search	Only show failures
	00001011	

Figure 219: Search and filter on



KINOVA	SAFETY CHECKSUM OO OO OO OO	Mon. Stop
Status		
Safety Functions 🔗 Controller 🛇 SCU	Actuators Virist	
Search Only show failures		
M8A 24 V current limiter fault	Core temperature too low	
M8B 24 V current limiter fault	See EEPROM corrupted	
Arithmetic functions	ST ADC configuration failed	
Cache management logic	ST calibration missing or corrupted	
Control flow instructions	ST ADC sampling error	
FPU registers bank	ST ADC saturation detected	
FPU single precision functions	FT temperature too low	
General purpose registers	ST temperature too high	
Load/store unit(s)	Watchdog reset occured	
Multiplier functions	M8A analog IO channel 1 fault detected	
Pipeline functions	M8A analog IO channel 2 fault detected	
Shift and rotate functions	M8A digital IO configuration failed	
Stack pointer	M8A digital IO overcurrent	
MCU RAM BIST fault	M8A digital IO SPI communication	
Voltage 24 V	M8A digital IO supply error	
Voltage 2V5	M8A digital IO thermal shutdown	
Voltage 3V3	M8B analog IO channel 1 fault detected	
Voltage monitoring 3V3 undervoltage	M8B analog IO channel 2 fault detected	
Voltage monitoring 3V3 overvoltage	M8B digital IO configuration failed	
Startup self tests timed out	M8B digital IO overcurrent	
Voltage monitoring 10 V overvoltage	M8B digital IO SPI communication	
Voltage monitoring 10 V undervoltage	M8B digital IO supply error	
Voltage monitoring 10 V overvoltage	M8B digital IO thermal shutdown	
Voltage monitoring 1 0V undervoltage	Analog IO configuration	
Voltage monitoring 48 V overvoltage	Analog IO fault detected	
Voltage monitoring 48 V undervoltage	Safe communication	
Core temperature too high		

Figure 220: Status page of the wrist

Each wrist status displays one of its two states.

- A green circle with a check mark (🕙) beside the status indicates that controller status is fine.
- A red octagon (
 beside the name of the controller status indicates that status has errors; more information may be available by tapping the Notifications icon (
).



The **Wrist** pane displays all the status that are being monitored, including internal variables. Some of the internal variables cannot be accessed by users; the variables may be associated with hardware problems. Contact support at support@kinova.ca

When you are not able to intervene with a status, you can attempt to recover on your own before contacting support.

1. Take note of the exact error along with the conditions that seem to have triggered it.



Tip: When a fault triggers, a message launches in Kortex Web App that provides information.

- Name of the fault
- Error code
- · Explanation of what can trigger the fault
- · What can be done to fix the problem
- 2. Reboot the controller.
- **3.** Re-install the *SWU* if the error persists.
- 4. If the problem persists, contact support at support@kinova.ca.

Robot monitoring

At any time, you can view current information about the *base*, *actuators*, *end effector* that is in use, and the flange pose.

The **Monitoring** pages display the live feedback from the sensors on the robot, as well as values computed from that feedback. Computed values include TCP position and velocity, among others.

To access the robot **Monitoring** page, tap \blacksquare > **Diagnostics** > **Monitoring**.



Monitoring																						
Overview		Detail	ed													DATA SNAPSH						
ntrolle																						
Operating Mode Monitored Stop		Control Mode Idle	Serving Mo Single Lev		amvoltage 11.536 V	0.01 A		Cpu Temperature 75.13 °C	Acceleration X 0 m/s ²	Accelera 3 m/		Acceleration Z 7 m/s ²	Angular Velocity 3 4 */s	مر)	Jar Velochy V Angular Velochy Z Š */5 7 */5							
uators																						
	Inverted		Attunte B			Advance #2		Actual	or 43		Actuance #4		Advance #5		Anu	eur 45						
Pas	ition		119.16			230.37*		24.1	85*		213.411*	246.08 *			233	425*						
Vel	selty		5 */s			9 */s		2	/s		2*/s		0 */s		3	3 */s						
Ter	Torque		4 Nm			1 Nm		1 Nm		1 Nm		0 N	im		0 Nm		4 Nm		1	1 Nm		
Masor	Current		0.172 A			1.131 A		0.18	3 A		1.386 A		0.553 A		1.5	1.503 A						
Ver	tage		11.622.1			12.181 V		12.5	25 V		12.115 V		11.254 V		1	I V						
Motor Te	mperature		37.76 *0			45.19 °C		43.7	2 °C		47.7 °C		40.22 °C		47.	i2 °C						
Core Ter	nperature		68.6 °C			70.28 °C		65.4	4 °C		78.49 °C		78.51 °C		84.24 °C							
Effector																						
x 500 mm	y 500 mm	: 500 mm	theta X -180 *	theta V -180 *	theta Z -180 *	Tool Twist Linear X 0 m/s	Tool Twist Line 0.002 m/s		Tool Twist Angular X 1 */8	Tool Twist Angular V 0 */s	Tool Twist Angular 2 9 */8	Commanded Tool Pose X 500 mm	Commanded Tool Pose V 500 mm	Commanded Tool Pose Z 500 mm	Commanded Tool Pose Theta X -180 *	Commanded Tool Pose The -180 *						
	iosi Pose Theta Z 80 *		External Tool Wee 3 Nor			External Tool Warsh Torque V 7 Nm			Whensh Tangue Z Nm		External Tool Wiensh Force X 4 N		External Tool Viter O N	ch Force Y		illiensh Force Z : N						
ge Pose																						
	x 500 mm			7 500 mm			: 500 mm	*		theta X 180 °			thera V 180 *		thema 2 180 *							

Figure 221: Overview pane of the Monitoring page

The page is divided into two panes.

- Overview
- Detailed

Both panes have a **Data Snapshot** button. To use the snapshot button, you must either have a *USB* in the port on the controller or you must be working from a computer. Tapping **Data Snapshot** saves a JSON file that contains all the information displayed on the pane you are viewing in the **Monitoring** page.

Besides saving a snapshot of the robot and viewing the robot, you can change the Actuators table to invert the top row with the first column.

Overview pane of the Monitoring page

The **Overview** pane displays an overview of the position and state the robot is currently in.

It is subdivided into four main parts.

- Controller
- Actuators
- End Effector
- Flange Pose



Part	Information displayed
Controller	Operating mode
	Control mode
	Servoing mode
Actuators	Position of each actuator; measured in °
	Torque of each actuator; measured in N·m
	Velocity of each actuator; measured in °/s
End Effector	X, Y, and Z; measured in mm
	Theta X, theta Y, and theta Z; measured in °
	Tool twist linear X, Y, and Z; measured in m/s
	Tool twist angular X, Y, and Z; measured in °/s
	Commanded tool pose X, Y, and Z; measured in mm
	Commanded tool pose Theta X, theta Y, and theta Z; measured in $^\circ$
	External tool wrench torque x, y, z measured in $N \cdot m$
	External tool wrench force x, y, z measured in N
Flange Pose	X, Y, and Z; measured in mm
	Theta X, theta Y, and theta Z; measured in °

Table 100: Content of the Overview pane

Detailed pane of the Monitoring page

The **Detailed** pane displays an more details about the current details of the *base* and the *actuators*. The information about the *end effector* and the *flange* are the same as that in the **Overview** pane.



KINDVE	3														SAFETY CHECKSUM	A 🗳 👶				
Overvier		Detai	iled													DATA SNAPSH				
ntroller																				
Operating Mode Monitored Stop		ntrol Mode Idle	Serving Mode Single Level	arm voltage 11.509 V		current 68 A	Cpu Temperature 72.33 °C	Acceler 0 m		Acceleration Y 3 m/s ²		celeration 2 6 m/s ²	Angular Velo S */s		Angular Velocity Y 5 */8	Angular Velocity 2 6 */8				
uators																				
] inverted		Actuator #1		Actuator #	2		Actuator 43		Ad	stuator #4		Actua	tor #5		Actuator 46				
	Position		359.023 *		179.066	•		187.952 *		2	9.147 *		228.0	367 *		3.239 *				
	Velocity		8 */s	8*/s						0 */s	7 */8		's		7 */s		9 */8			
	Torque		2 Nm		1 Nm				4 Nm			4 Nm		4 Nm		2 Nm				
Mer	Motor Current		0.509 A		1.547 A			0.088 A 0.146 A 1.833		1.833 A			1.81 A							
Voltage		11.492 V			11.136 \	/		11.845 V		10	2.925 V		11.521 V			11.748 V				
Motor	Temperature		42.6 °C		37.64 *0	,		°C		47.47 °C		38.41 °C			38.11 °C		38.11 °C		44.22 °C	
Core	Core Temperature		72.99 °C		73.4 °C			66.45 °C 71.94 °C 81.2 °C		81.2 °C		2 *0		81.97 °C						
Effector																				
× 500 mm	y 500 mm	500 mm	theta X -180 *	vheta Y -180 *	theia Z -180 *	Teel Twist Linear X -0.003 m/s	Teel Twist Linear V 0.002 m/s	Teol Twist Linear Z -0.002 m/s	Teel Twist Angula 3 */s	er X Tool Twist 4		vist Angular 2 3 */s	Commanded Tool Pose X 500 mm	Commanifed Tool Pose 500 mm	Commanded Tool Pa 500 mm	se Z Commanded Tool Pose Theo -180 *				
Commanded To -18		Com	manded Tool Pose Thera 2 -180 °	External T	Tool Wrenah Tongue X S Nm	Diter	al Tool Wrensh Tonque V 7 Nm		External Tool Illiensh To O Nm	rque Z		al Wiensh Farse X S N		External Tool Wrench Force V 4 N		External Tool Wrench Force Z 2 N				
nge Pose																				
	* 500 mm			y 0 mm			: imm			theta X 180 *			thetis Y 180 *			theta Z 180 *				
end Hedden- Ren	Q														y. Hand					

Figure 222: Detailed pane of the Monitoring page

Table 101: Content of the Detailed pane

Part	Information displayed
Controller	Operating mode
	Control mode
	Servoing mode
	Arm voltage
	Arm current
	CPU temperature
	Acceleration X, Y, and Z
	Angular velocity X, Y, and Z
Actuators	Position of each actuator, measured in °
	Torque of each actuator, measured in N·m
	Velocity of each actuator, measured in °/s
	Motor current of each actuator; measured in A
	Voltage of each actuator; measured in V
	Motor temperature; measured in °C
	Core temperature; measured in °C



Part	Information displayed
End Effector	X, Y, and Z; measured in mm
	Theta X, theta Y, and theta Z; measured in $^{\circ}$
	Tool twist linear X, Y, and Z; measured in m/s
	Tool twist angular X, Y, and Z; measured in °/s
	Commanded tool pose X, Y, and Z; measured in mm
	Commanded tool pose Theta X, theta Y, and theta Z; measured in $^{\circ}$
	External tool wrench torque x, y, z measured in $N \cdot m$
	External tool wrench force x, y, z measured in N
Flange Pose	X, Y, and Z; measured in mm
	Theta X, theta Y, and theta Z; measured in $^{\circ}$

Event notifications

Notifications about the robot and actions taken in *Kortex Web App* are sent through Kortex Web App.

Access notifications of events by tapping the notification bell.



Figure 223: Notification bell when not selected



Figure 224: Notification bell when selected

View events that have happened from the **Events** page.



	ova			SAFETY CHECKSUM OO OO OO OO	¢ 6	Mon. Stop	(U) On
Events						1	× 2
Q _{user}		Х			م	₩ -	3
From: 2022-03	-08 17:19:09:000 🗴	To: 2022-03-09 17:19:12:000 😵 WARNING 🛞 INFO 🛞 4					
Code	Severity	Info 5					Â
4401	1	Session 32686 was created for user admin					
4401	1	Session 61597 was created for user admin	6				
4401	1	Session 33069 was created for user admin					
4401	<u>î</u>	Session 31701 was created for user admin			8	(9)	•
				Rows per page: 10 -	1-10 of 31	$\langle \rangle$	
Monitored Hold				ا Hand	Jog	jog Dav	ling

Figure 225: The Events page and its parts

1	Delete icon (
	Tap to delete the events on	the page.
2	Close icon (X)	
	Tap to close the page.	
3	Filtering tools	
	All filtering tools can be use	ed independently or with each other.
	Search bar	Enter one or more words that may be found in the title of the notification to view all similar notifications.
		Tap X to remove the search.
	Search icon (^Q)	Tap the icon to launch the Search bar.
	Show Columns (IIII)	Tap to launch the Show Columns pane.
		Q III Show Columns × ✓ Code ✓ Severity ✓ Timestamp ✓ Title



Select one or more of the types of information you want to see.

- Code
- Severity
- Timestamp
- Title

Tap X to close the Show Columns pane.

Tap to launch the Filters pane.

Filter icon (=)

	Q	 Ŧ
		>
FILTERS RESET		
From		
2022-06-13 03:37:13 PM		
То		
2022-06-21 03:37:18 PM		
Severity		
🗹 CRITICAL 🗹 ERROR 🗹 INFO		
WARNING		

Enter start and end dates if you want to view notifications within a time range.

Select and deselect filters based on Severity of the notification.

- CRITICAL
- ERROR
- INFO
- WARNING

Tap **RESET** to clear the current filters.

Tap X to close the Filters pane.

4 Active filters

The filters that have been selected using the filtering tools.

Tap **X** to close the filter that is not applicable.

5 Table column headers

The column headers indicate the type of information that is displayed.



6

Information

A summary of each event that meets the filtering criterion is displayed in the Details pane.

≡ KIN	ova							SAFETY CHECKSUM 00 00 00 00	Ŵ	6	O Mon. Stop	
Events											Ē	×
				Q	ш	Ŧ	Title Program Created					>
CRITICAL 🚫	ERROR 🚫	INFO 🛞					Severity	Timestamp		Code		
Code	Severity	Timestamp	Title				1 INFO	2022-06-21 12:38:58:749		8355		
8357	0	2022-06-21 12:39:05:438	Program Updated				Explanation Program 'New Program' (2857	(02704) has been exceeded				
8355	0	2022-06-21 12:38:58:749	Program Created					663726) has been created				
4401	0	2022-06-21 12:35:07:524	Login				Suggestion N/A					
			Rows per page: 10 👻	21-23 of 23	<	>						
deciliared Holds to Ran	. <u>O</u>							↓ Hand Guiding	ک Joc Ange			nabling Device
Stop Ran	A015							Guiding	loge	ter Car	tesian	

Title	Summary of the event
Severity	Level of severity of the event
Timestamp	Date and time the event took place
Code	Number associated with the event to make reporting easy
Explanation	Reason the event is triggered
Suggestion	Details what can be done to circumvent the event if applicable
	Tap > to close the Details pane.
Number of rows, or item entrie	es, of information that is to be displayed on each page
Current options are 10, 25,	50, 100.
-	ently displayed, with respect to the number of item entries and the total number of entries that meet the filtering ing tools.
Previous and Next arrows	
Top to povigoto the person of	of avanta

Tap to navigate the pages of events.



7

8

9

Plugins

The modular design of Link 6 makes it a robot with expanding capabilities. The expanding capabilities are added on as *plugins*.

Link 6 comes with two pre-installed plugins and cannot be uninstalled.

Arm plugin	The plugin handles all actions needed to control the <i>arm</i> . The configuration and settings of the arm plugin are not visible because they are not modifiable.
Industrial I/O plugin	The plugin handles all general <i>I/O</i> between the <i>controller</i> and on the <i>wrist</i> . That is, the plugin exchanges information using pure electrical signals through cables connected to some other piece of equipment.

Administrators can install new plugins to expand the capabilities of their robot. The plugins are on the Kinova website under Resources.

All pre-installed plugins start to run when the controller is switched on. However, they can be stopped so the settings can be modified. All plugins that are running are, by default, active.

Many plugins contain actions that the user can use when programming the robot with the visual programming interface in Kortex Web App. Each plugin may also contain parameters that can be modified in Kortex Web App from the corresponding plugin page.

All plugins have two pages: **Configurations** and **About**.

Related topics

Visual programming on page 212 Installing plugins on page 175 Overview of working with plugins on page 179 Plugins on page 173

Arm plugin

Link 6 comes with the arm plugin pre-installed.

There are no configurable parameters for the arm plugin. The **Configurations** portion of the **Arm plugin** page merely states that it does not have any modifiable configurations.

The **About** portion lists information specific to the arm, such as name, package name, version, type of installation, and a description of the plugin.



Industrial I/O Plugin

Link 6 comes with the Industrial I/O plugin pre-installed.

The Industrial I/O plugin has tiles in the visual programming interface in *Kortex Web App* to exchange information using pure electrical signals through cables connected to some other piece of equipment. The equipment is connected to the general purpose and high speed connectors in the *controller*.

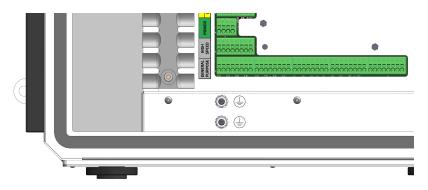


Figure 226: Industrial equipment connection on the controller

There are many configurable parameters for the Industrial I/O plugin. Access all parameters from **Systems > Plugins > Industrial I/O Plugin > Configurations**. The plugin has several pages of configurations, each page dedicated to one aspect of industrial I/Os.

- Controller Digital Outputs
- Controller Digital Inputs
- Controller Analog
- Wrist Analog
- Wrist Digital



Important: To configure any part of the Industrial I/O plugin, you must first tap **Stop** to stop running the plugin.

Related topics Variables on page 215 Variable Management page on page 224

Controller analog on the Industrial I/O plugin page

All analog inputs for the *controller* can be configured on the **Controller Analog** pane of the **Industrial I/O** plugin page.

Analog has a voltage resolution of 0.1 V and a current resolution of 1 mA.





= KINOVa				safety check 00 00 00 00	ISUM 🌲 🤇	Mon. Stop	(U) On
Plugins > Industrial I/O I	Plugin (industrial_io)						
Configurations	About					Run	•
Controller Digital Outputs	Controller Digital Inputs	roller Analog Wris	st Analog Wris	t Digital			_
AIO_0							
Name AIO_0							
High Impedance	•						4
AIO_1							
AIO_1							
High Impedance	•						
Monitored Stop					Hand Guiding		nabling Device

Figure 227: Controller Analog pane

Each analog I/O of the controller has its own smaller pane on the **Controller Analog** pane. Each one of **AIO_0** to **AIO_3** corresponds to each of the terminal connections on the controller.

Table 102	: Controller	analog	configurations
-----------	--------------	--------	----------------

Parameter	Description
Mode	Select a driver mode.
	High Impedance (disable)
	Voltage Output
	Current Output
	Voltage Input
	Current Input
Name	Enter a meaningful name for that specific analog input or output for the controller.
	The name is visible in the visual programming interface.

Controller digital inputs on the Industrial I/O plugin page

All digital inputs for the *controller* must be configured on the **Controller Digital Inputs** pane of the **Industrial I/O** plugin page.

KINOVA

Each digital input for the controller is defined independently from the other digital input for the controller.

= KINOVa		safety checksum 00 00 00 00	≜ 6 *	Mon. Stop	(U) On
Plugins > Industrial I/O F	lugin (industrial_io)				
Configurations	About			Run	•
Controller Digital Outputs	Controller Digital Inputs Controller Analog Wrist Analog Wr	ist Digital			
D1_0					- 1
Name DI_0					
Enable					
🗹 Debouncing Filter					
Debouncing Delay 50 μs	•				
DI_1					
Name DI_1					Ŧ
Monitored Stop		Hand Guiding			abling evice

Figure 228: Controller Digital Inputs pane

Each digital I/O of the controller has its own smaller pane on the **Controller Digital Inputs** pane. Each one of **DI_0** to **DI_7** corresponds to each of the terminal connections on the controller.

Parameter	Description		
Name	Enter a meaningful name for that specific digital input for the controller.		
	The name is visible in the visual programming interface.		
Enable Select when you want to enable the input.			
Debouncing Filter	Select to configure the <i>debouncing</i> delay.		
Debouncing Delay	The debouncing delay is set in microseconds. Valid values are 50 μs, 100 μs, 400 μs, 800 μs, 1600 μs, 3200 μs, 12800 μs, and 20000 μs.		

Related topics

General-purpose digital inputs on page 35

Controller electrical and communications interface on page 27

Controller digital outputs on the Industrial I/O plugin page

All digital outputs for the controller must be configured on the **Controller Digital Outputs** pane of the **Industrial I/O** plugin page.



Each digital output for the *controller* is defined independently from the other digital output for the controller.

	KINOVA			SAFETY CHECKSUM OO OO OO OO	≜ 6	🔥 Mon. Stop	(U) On
۲	Plugins > Industrial I/O P	ugin (industrial_io)					
	Configurations	About				Run	•
	Controller Digital Outputs	Controller Digital Inputs Controller Analog Wrist <i>i</i>	nalog Wrist Digital				
	DO_0						
	DO_0						1
	High Side	•					
	DO_1						
	DO_1						
	Mode High Side	•					
Monit	pred			Hand Guiding	Jog Angular	<u>د</u> ک	abling evice

Figure 229: Controller Digital Outputs pane

= KINOVa		SAFETY CHECKSUM () () () () () () () () () () () () ()
Plugins > Industrial I/O	Plugin (industrial_io)	
Configurations	About	Run 🕨
Controller Digital Outputs	Controller Digital Inputs Controller Analog Wrist Analog	Wrist Digital
DO_0		
Name DO_0		
High Side		
Push Pull		
Name DO_1		
Mode High Side	•	
<u>ტ</u>		Frabling

Figure 230: Controller Digital Outputs pane with Mode drop-down

Each digital I/O of the controller has its own smaller pane on the **Controller Digital Outputs** pane. Each one of **DO_0** to **DO_7** corresponds to each of the terminal connections on the controller.



Parameter	Description			
Name Enter a meaningful name for that specific digital output for the contr				
	The name is visible in the visual programming interface.			
Mode	Select a driver mode.			
	• High Side			
	• Push Pull			

Related topics

General-purpose digital outputs on page 36 Controller electrical and communications interface on page 27

Wrist analog on the Industrial I/O plugin page

All analog inputs for the *wrist* can be configured on the **Wrist Analog** pane of the **Industrial I/O** plugin page.

Analog has a voltage resolution of 0.1 V and a current resolution of 1 mA.

≡	KINOVA				SAFETY CHE 00 00 00 0		Mon. Stop	
۲	Plugins > Industrial I/O P	Plugin (industrial_io)						
	Configurations	About					Rur	•
	Controller Digital Outputs	Controller Digital Inputs	Controller Analog	Wrist Analog	Wrist Digital			Î
	WRIST_AOL_1							
	Name WRIST_AOL_1							
	High Impedance	•						
	WRIST_AOL_2							
	Name WRIST_AOL_2							
	Mode High Impedance	•						Ţ
Monito	pred					Hand Jog Guiding Angular		inabling Device

Figure 231: Wrist Analog pane

≡	KINOVA				SAFETY CH 00 00 00 0	• 6 *	ကြီ Mon. Stop	(U) On
۲	Plugins > Industrial I/O F	Plugin (industrial_io)						
	Configurations	About					Run	•
	Controller Digital Outputs	Controller Digital Inputs	Controller Analog	Wrist Analog	Wrist Digital			^
	WRIST_AOL_1							
	Name WRIST_AOL_1							
	High Impedance							
	Voltage Output Current Output Voltage Input Current Input High Impedance	×						
Monit Sto	fored							wice

Figure 232: Wrist Analog pane with Mode drop-down

Each analog I/O of the wrist has its own smaller pane on the **Wrist Digital** pane. Each one of **WRIST_AOI_1** and **WRIST_AOI_2** corresponds to the two RS 485 connectors on the wrist.

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter a meaningful name for that specific analog input or output for the controller.
	The name is visible in the visual programming interface.
Mode	Select a mode.
	High Impedance (disabled)
	Voltage Output
	Current Output
	Voltage Input
	Current Input

Table 103: Wrist analog configurations

Related topics Electrical interface on page 18





Wrist digital on the Industrial I/O plugin page

All digital inputs and outputs for the *wrist* must be configured on the **Wrist Digital** pane of the **Industrial I/O** plugin page.

Each digital input and output of the wrist is defined independently from the other digital input and output of the wrist.

≡	KINOVA				SAFETY 00 00 0	checksum 0 00	6	Mon. Stop	(U) On
۲	Plugins > Industrial I/O P	lugin (industrial_io)							
_	Configurations	About						Run	•
	Controller Digital Outputs	Controller Digital Inputs	Controller Analog	Wrist Analog	Wrist Digital				Î
	WRIST_DIGITAL_IO1								
	Type Input	•							
	WRIST_DIGITAL_I01								
	Enable								
	✓ Debouncing Filter								
	Debouncing Delay 50 µs	•							
	WRIST_DIGITAL_IO2								•
Monito Sto) ored p					Hand Guiding			bling vice

Figure 233: Wrist Digital pane when the pin is set an input



≡	KINOVA				SAFETY 0 00 00 00	нескѕим) 00	¢ 6	Mon. Stop	(U) On
۲	Plugins > Industrial I/O F	Plugin (industrial_io)							
	Configurations	About						Run	•
	Controller Digital Outputs	Controller Digital Inputs	Controller Analog	Wrist Analog	Wrist Digital				
	WRIST_DIGITAL_I01								
	Output	*							
	Name WRIST_DIGITAL_IO1								
	Mode High Side	•							
	WRIST_DIGITAL_I02								
	Type Output	•							
Monite Sto	pred					Hand Guiding	لم Jog Angular C		abling evice

Figure 234: Wrist Digital pane when the pin is set an output

Each digital I/O of the wrist has its own smaller pane on the **Wrist Digital** pane. Each one of **WRIST_DIGITAL_IO1** to **WRIST_DIGITAL_IO8** corresponds to each of the eight pins on the M8 connector on the wrist.

Table	104:	Wrist	digital	configurations
-------	------	-------	---------	----------------

Parameter	Description
Туре	Select either Input or Output.
Name	Enter a meaningful name for that specific analog input or output for the controller.
	The name is visible in the visual programming interface.
Parameters specific to	Input pins
Enable	Select when you want to enable the input.
Debouncing Filter	Select to configure the debouncing delay.
Debouncing Delay	The <i>debouncing</i> delay is set in microseconds. Valid values are 50 μs, 100 μs, 400 μs, 800 μs, 1600 μs, 3200 μs, 12800 μs, and 20000 μs.
Parameters specific to	Output pins



Parameter	Description
Mode	Select one of two modes.
	High Side
	• Push Pull

Related topics

Wrist I/O on page 43



Accessories

Accessories can enhance the Link 6 experience, either by keeping the work environment aesthetically pleasing or by increasing the functional capabilities of the robot.

Accessories range from mounts to adapters to vision systems that simplify complex tasks.

In addition to the accessories by Kinova, there is a growing number of accessories that Link 6 can support.

Accessory	Plugin	Plugin version
OnRobot RG2 Gripper	OnRobot Plugin	1.1.0
Kinova Robotiq adapter	n/a	n/a
Robotiq 2F-85 Gripper	Robotiq Plugin	1.1.0
Robotiq 2F-140 Gripper	Robotiq Plugin	1.1.0
Robotiq Hand-E Gripper	Robotiq Plugin	1.1.0
Vision module	Vision Plugin	1.1.0

Table 105: Partner accessories that are compatible with Link 6

Related topics

Link 6 overview on page 1

External emergency stop station

The *E-stop* station is an optional component that provides *E-stop* functions in case the *teach pendant* is not used or additional *E-stop* locations are required. It is connected directly to the terminals in the *controller*.

Photo: Rockwell Automation



Figure 235: Rockwell Automation 800F-1YMQ3



Related topics

Safety I/O on page 87

Installing an external emergency stop station

Whenever you need to install an external *E-stop* station, be sure to read and follow all mounting instructions from the manufacturer.

Before you begin

Personnel:

• Number of Workers: 1

Supplies

- 1 x Emergency stop station
- 1 x Cable

Tools

• Ferrule (optional)

About this task

View or download publications at rok.auto/literature .

Procedure

- 1. Make sure the *controller* is switched off.
- 2. Connect the E-stop to the controller. Use the wire order on the E-stop connector.

Terminal (Controller side)	Wire color	Pin (Device side)
A1	Black	2
A2	Red	1
B1	White	4
B2	Yellow	3

3. Connect the 4-pin connector to the Emergency stop station.

Related topics

Safety I/O on page 87



External 3-position enabling device

The external 3-position *enabling device* is an optional component that provides enabling device functions in case the *teach pendant* is not used. It is connected directly to the terminals in the *controller*.

It is connected directly to the terminals in the controller.

Photo: IDEC



Figure 236: IDEC HE1G-21SM

Related topics Safety I/O on page 87

Installing the external 3-position enabling device

Whenever you need to install an external 3-position *enabling device*, be sure to read and follow all mounting instructions from the manufacturer.

Before you begin

Personnel:

• Number of Workers: 1

Supplies

- 1 x 3-position enabling device
- 1 x Cable

Tools

• Ferrule (optional)

About this task

View or download publications at www.ca.idec.com.



Procedure

- **1.** Make sure the *controller* is switched off.
- Follow the wiring instructions in Industrial I/O Safety I/O inputs. Wiring for use of Channel 0

Terminal (Controller side)	Wire color	Pin (Device side)
AI_0	Black	2
24_o (Bank A)	Red	1
BI_0	White	4
24_o (Bank B)	Yellow	3

3. Set the Safety I/O to **Enabling Device**.

Related topics

Safety I/O on page 87





Maintenance

Preventive maintenance of Link 6 averts major issues that can arise, and keeps the robot and users safe.

There are three main things to do to give the robot a long and productive life.

- Clean the robot.
- · Perform a visual inspection of the robot.
- Service the robot according to schedule.

To perform basics in maintenance, always have a good supply of consumables.

Maintenance is made of preventive measures and maintaining fasteners.

Consumables

Some parts of Link 6 can be removed and misplaced. Other parts may wear out. Always make sure you have a good supply of spare parts to lessen downtime.

The number of each part that should be kept on hand is only a recommendation of the minimum number of each part. It may be wise to have more than the recommended minimum quantity listed.



Note: Blank cells in the table Recommended spare parts list indicate there is no information available at the time of writing.

Table 106: Recommended spare parts list

Part	Manufacturer	Part number	Order number	Quantity on hand	Note
Plastic dust protection cap - M23	Phoenix Contact	RC-Z2469	1611797	1	
Plastic dust protection cap - M16	Sealcon			1	
Sealed cap for wrist Pogo pins	Kinova	KR21537		1	
Controller cable entry plate	lcotek	KEL-DPZ 24 25	50710	0	Replace if needed. The plate will not seal the controller if the cables are removed.



Part	Manufacturer	Part number	Order number	Quantity on hand	Note
Controller cable entry plate plug kit	lcotek	ST-B	42801	0	Seal the controller after removing the cables.
Fuse 3AG, Fact- Acting, 15A	Bussman	ACD-15-R		2	
Fan filter	Rübsamen & Herr	AM 115P		5	Quantity may vary, based on working environment.

Preventive maintenance

Always perform preventive maintenance within the time scheduled maintenance time frame to avoid downtime of the robot.

Different parts of Link 6 require maintenance checks on a daily, weekly, quarterly, or yearly schedule. Some preventive maintenance does not adhere to a specific schedule.

Daily maintenance

Always perform daily tasks daily to avoid downtime of the robot.

Table 107: Daily checks for preventive maintenance

Validation task	Corrective action
Check the emergency stop functions as expected.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca
Check all states of the 3-position enabling device function as expected if it is expected to be used.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca
Check all terminal connections are secured.	Redo connections.
Check the cables are in good condition with no rips, tears, or frays.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca
Check the robot joint caps are installed properly on the robot with no visible gaps and secure.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca
Check the tools and accessories are attached correctly and are not loose.	Secure the tools and accessories.
Check the joints are not loose.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca



Validation task	Corrective action
Check the bolts on the base are tightened according to the specifications and the base does not move when the robot moves.	Secure the base of the arm.
Check the casing of the controller is closed, with no openings along the edges or elsewhere.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca
Check the I/O panel on the controller is closed.	Close the panels on the controller.
Check the end caps are on all electrical connectors that are not in use.	Place end caps on all exposed electrical connectors.
Check the environment is the same as usual, with no additional objects in the area.	Remove objects that normally are not in the environment.

Weekly maintenance

Always perform weekly tasks weekly to avoid downtime of the robot.

Table 108: Weekly checks for preventive maintenance

Validation task	Corrective action
Check the air filter in the controller is clean.	Replace the air filter.

Quarterly maintenance

Always perform quarterly tasks every three months to avoid downtime of the robot.

Table 109: Quarterly checks for preventive maintenance

Validation task	Corrective action
Check the main power is secured to the controller.	Reattach the latch.
Check all connected safety inputs and outputs are secured and functioning.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca
Check the cable and connector of the Teach pendant are in good shape.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca
Torque check the base fastener.	Retorque.
Torque check the wrist fastener and end effector tooling.	Retorque.
Make sure the actuator covers are not loose.	Retorque.





Validation task	Corrective action
Valluation lask	

Check that the fan in the controller is rotating freely. Contact support at support@kinova.ca

Yearly maintenance

Always perform yearly tasks every year to avoid downtime of the robot.

Table 110: Yearly checks for preventive maintenance

Validation task	Corrective action
Check Protective earth grounding resistance is less than 0.1 Ω to the controller.	Replace the cable.
Check Protective earth grounding resistance is less than 0.1 Ω to the arm.	Replace the cable.

Unscheduled maintenance

Even by following a maintenance schedule, unexpected maintenance is required.

Some of the unscheduled maintenance tasks are also scheduled maintenance tasks under certain circumstances. For instance, when there is a sudden power outage or when an accident happens with the robot, it is recommended to perform a visual inspection of the robot.

Table 111: Unscheduled maintenance tasks

Validation task	Corrective action
Cables are in good condition with no rips, tears, or frays.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca
Make sure the joint caps are on the robot. Also, make sure there are no visible gaps and that they are secured in place.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca
Tools and accessories are attached correctly and are not loose.	Secure the tools and accessories.
Joints are not loose.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca
The base is fixed correctly. In other words, the bolts on the base are tightened according to the specifications and the base dose not move when the robot moves.	Secure the base of the arm.



Validation task	Corrective action
The casing of the controller is closed, with no openings along the edges or elsewhere.	Contact support at support@kinova.ca
Panels on the controller are closed.	Close the panels on the controller.
End caps are on all electrical connectors that are not in use.	Place end caps on all exposed electrical connectors.
The environment is the same as usual, with no additional objects in the area.	Remove objects that normally are not in the environment.
Make sure the fuse is functioning.	Replace the fuse.

Fastener maintenance

To keep Link 6 safe, the fasteners require regular maintenance.

Table 112: Fastener locations and maintenance

Robot part	Location	Quantity	Fastener type	Recommended torque	Maximum thread engagement
Base	Base to table	4	M8×1.25	20 N·m	
	Protective earth screw	1	M5×0.8		
Arm	Actuator covers - Size 80	3	M4×0.7 - 8	0.5 N·m	
	Actuator covers - Size 110	4	M4x0.7 - 8	0.5 N·m	
Wrist	End effector tooling	4	M6×1.0	7-9 N∙m	6.0 mm
	Bracket for GigE adapter (2x side)	2	M4×0.7		5.0 mm
Controller	Cable pass-through plate	4	M5×0.8		
	Protective earth stud	1	M5×0.8		
	Mounting bracket fasteners to controller	4	M6×1.0 - 10		



Robot part	Location	Quantity	Fastener type	Recommended torque	Maximum thread engagement
	Mounting bracket fasteners to wall	4	M8×1.25 - 14		
Teach pendant	Mounting bracket fasteners to wall	4			

Servicing

Some routine maintenance and repair work must be performed by a Kinova expert.

Not servicing Link 6 in a timely manner voids the Kinova warranty.

Contact Kinova support to learn how to have the robot serviced.



Disposal

The product contains parts that are deemed to be hazardous waste at the end of the life of the product.

After Link 6 has reached its life expectancy, you have two options.

- Continue using the device.
- Replace the robot and dispose of the old device appropriately.

If you wish to continue using Link 6 after its expected lifespan, Kinova highly recommends that you return the device temporarily to Kinova for routine servicing that includes inspection of the robot, as well as replacement and repair of any internal components that may be worn out.



If you wish to dispose of the robot, note that the robot contains materials that can be recycled. However, some of the materials are deemed hazardous. Specialized companies can dismantle the unit and sort out these materials. When you dispose of the unit, inform yourself about local regulations concerning waste management.



Troubleshooting

Knowing how to correct and recover from robotic issues is important to keeping the Link 6 working.

When Link 6 encounters a problem, it usually triggers a fault. When a fault is triggered, the information on the **Status** page should be enough to come to a diagnostic. There may be cases in which some users view certain behaviors as undesirable; however, from the point of view of the robot, the supposed undesirable behavior is expected. There is no diagnostic information available for expected behavior.

There are many examples of expected robot behavior that some users may deem undesirable listed. If you believe you have an issue with Link 6, check to see if you can find a similar issue. If you cannot find an issue similar to yours, please write to us at support@kinova.ca.

Issues related to hardware

Examples of hardware-related issues that you may have deal with the controller, the arm, the buttons on the wrist, the tool, and external equipment.

Why does the controller have no power?

Condition

The power button on the controller is switched on, but there is no power in the controller.

Cause

The power cable may not be connected to the controller or to a power source.

Remedy

Procedure

- · Connect the power cable to the controller.
- · Connect the other end of the power cable to the power source.

Why is the robot not powering on?

Condition

The controller is on, but the robot does not power on.



Cause

The cable attached to the arm of the robot is not connected to the controller.

Remedy

Connect the robot cable to the controller.

Why is the robot moving in joint Hand Guiding mode by itself?

Condition

The robot is in Joint Hand Guiding mode and it is moving without the application of external forces.

Cause

The masses or centers of mass of the tool or payload is not correct.

Remedy

Procedure

- Make sure the mass of the tool entered in Kortex Web App matches that of the tool.
- Make sure the center of mass of the tool entered in Kortex Web App matches that of the center of mass of the tool.
- Make sure the mass of the payload entered in Kortex Web App matches that of the payload.
- Make sure the center of mass of the payload entered in Kortex Web App matches that of the center of mass of the payload.

Why is the snapshot button not working?

Condition #1

When the waypoint capture, or snapshot, button is pressed, the waypoint does not appear in the program that is currently on the **Program** page.

Cause

The current context on the **Program** page is selecting a block that is not a waypoint block.

Remedy

Procedure

1. Look at the Sequence editor to see which block is selected.



- 2. Select the waypoint capture block that represents where you currently are in the program.
- **3.** Press the waypoint capture button.

Cause #2

The snapshot button is held for too long.

Remedy for cause #2

Press the snapshot button quickly.

Why is my tool not working?

Condition

The tool connected to the robot is not working.

Cause

The plugin associated with the tool is not installed or is not activated.

Remedy

Procedure

- 1. Tap Systems > Plugins to access the Plugins page.
- 2. Install the plugin associated with the tool if it is not already installed.
- 3. Activate the plugin associated with the tool.
- **4.** Reset or initialize the plugin associated with the tool if the plugin requires this action.

Related topics

Installing plugins on page 175

Emergency stop

Condition

An emergency stop signal is sent to the robot.

Cause

There are two possible causes.

- The E-stop button on the teach pendant, or elsewhere in the system, is pressed.
- A signal is detected on the input reserved for emergency stops.



Remedy

Procedure

- **1.** Make sure nothing is interfering with the robot and that it is safe to proceed.
- 2. Remove the signal.

Release the E-stop button, such as the one on the teach pendant, by turning the button.

- **3.** Clear the fault.
- **4.** Make sure the jumper wire configuration matches the installation.

Why is the wrist enabling device not enabling Hand Guiding mode?

Condition

The robot cannot be moved by hand. The wrist ring flashes green once each second.

Cause

The enabling device on the wrist is not pressed and held in its center position.

Remedy

Press the Wrist enabling device in the center position until the wrist ring illuminates a steady blue. Continue to hold the button in the center position while you move the arm.

Why is the controller hot?

Condition

The *controller* is hot or the diagnostics in *Kortex Web App* indicate the *SCU* or the *MCU* are overheating.

Cause

The temperature of the SCU core or MCU board is too high.

Remedy

Procedure

- Check the controller fans are spinning freely.
- Check that neither the controller fans nor the fan filter are clogged.



Why did my robot collide with the tool installed on its end effector?

Condition

While the robot was moving, it collided with the tool installed on its end effector.

Cause

The tool sphere protection zone is not configured to contain the entire tool.

Remedy

Procedure

- 1. Switch off the arm.
- 2. Navigate to Safety > Protection Zones.
- 3. Configure the Tool Sphere protection zone so that it contains the entire volume of your tool.

Why is my tool, connected to the M8 connector, not responding?

Condition

A tool is connected to an M8 connector on the wrist, but the tool is not responding to commands received from a program.

Cause

The connection to the M8 connector is incorrect.

Remedy

Validate that the correct M8 connector is used and that the connector is not damaged.

Why does my robot refuse to move in a particular direction?

Condition

While moving the robot in Manual Jog or Hand Guiding mode, the robot refuses to move in a certain direction; however, it does move in other directions.

Cause

One or multiple joints are reaching their position limits.



Remedy

Use Jog Angular mode to move the actuator back to its zero position.

Why is my teach pendant only displaying a console?

Condition

The teach pendant is connected and the controller is switched on, but only a console is displayed on the teach pendant.

Cause

The connector of the teach pendant is inserted incorrectly in the controller, which causes some of the pins to be misaligned.

Remedy

Disconnect and reconnect the teach pendant properly.

Why are my digital outputs not operating at 24 V?

Condition

Multiple elements are connected to consecutive digital outputs. Applying an output signal does not yield 24V.

Cause

The load on a terminal block, composed of 4 I/Os, is too high.

Remedy

Distribute the electrical load over more terminal blocks.

Issues related to safety elements

Examples of safety-related issues that you may have deal with the safety configurations and safety I/O connections.

Why can I not edit any safety configurations?

Condition

None of the parameters on any of the Safety pages are modifiable.



Note: This condition only happens when the user is an operator and is not an admin user.

Cause

The user is an operator. Only admin users can modify safety configurations.

Remedy

Procedure

- Tap **S** > **ELEVATE PERMISSIONS** and enter the admin password.
- · Contact an admin user to discuss which safeties may need to be modified.

Why is the external safety device not working?

Condition

The external device attached to the robot is not working. The robot is in a *stop category (SC)* 0, where there is no electrical power in the robot.

Cause

The device is not configured correctly on the safety I/O channel.

Remedy

Make sure the safety I/O channel associated with the external device is configured correctly.

Select the correct safety type from the safety type drop-down on the **Safety I/Os** page in *Kortex Web App* for the channel where the device is connected.

Why is the robot stuck in Reduced mode?

Condition

The robot is moving at Reduced speed. All **Safety** pages indicate the robot should be moving at Normal speeds.

Cause

The robot is receiving a signal to operate at Reduced speed.

Remedy

Make sure no safety I/O channel is sending a signal to the robot to operate at Reduced speed.



Why are my digital outputs not operating at 24 V?

Condition

When operating in joint Hand Guiding mode, the robot triggers a fault for exceeding speed limits.

Cause

When the arm is driven in joint Hand Guiding mode near the outer edge of its workspace, small angular velocities can yield large *Cartesian* velocities on the *TCP* and trigger speed limit faults.

Remedy

Move the *TCP* closer to the arm when you move the first two joints of the robot in Hand Guiding mode.

Issues related to modes of operation

Examples of issues with modes of operation that you may have include modes being disabled and modes that seem stuck.

Why is Manual mode disabled?

Condition

The arrows of the virtual joystick of Jog Angular and Jog Cartesian in *Kortex Web App* are grayed out.

The enabling device in Kortex Web App illuminates white.

Cause

The enabling device is not held in its center position.

Remedy

Procedure

- Make sure you are not pressing the enabling device all the way to the bottom.
- Make sure you are pressing the enabling device in its middle position.

Why can the robot not exit Recovery mode?

Condition

The robot cannot exit Recovery mode. The wrist ring flashes yellow two times each second.



Remember: As long as the robot is in Recovery mode, all safety position-related limits are ignored and all joint speed safety limits are limited to a maximum speed of 30 °/s.

Cause

There are two situations where the robot remains in recovery mode.

- The initial cause of the fault is still in effect.
- After clearing the initial fault, another fault is triggered in the current configuration of the robot.

Remedy

Procedure

- Make sure the robot is far from its position limits.
- Make sure the robot is outside of the enabled protection zones.
 - a) Make sure the speed limit of each of the joints is set to 30 °/s.
 - b) Tap Safety > Protection Zones.
 - c) Visualize the current pose of the robot relative to the protection zones.
 - d) Move the robot to a safe position using either Hand Guiding or Manual Jog mode.

Related topics

Protection zones on page 77 Recovery mode on page 122 State: Fault on page 113

Why is my robot not moving even if it is in an operating mode where it should be possible?

Condition

When operating in Automatic, Hold-to-Run, or Manual mode, the robot does not perform any *Cartesian* command. A notification is displayed on the teach pendant, but the robot does not enter a fault state.

Cause

The robot is near a singularity.

Remedy

Use any angular control mode to move the robot away from the singularity.



Issues related to plugins

Examples of issues you may have with plugins deal with plugin installation, configuration, and activation.

Why can I not configure Industrial I/Os?

Condition

The fields on the **Configurations** page of the **Industrial I/O** plugin page are not selectable.

Cause

The Industrial I/Os need to be switched on before they can be configured.

Remedy

Make sure the Industrial I/Os are receiving power. **Related topics** Industrial I/O Plugin on page 324 Industrial I/O panel overview on page 32

Issues related to programs and programming

Examples of issues related to programs and programming deal with variables, action blocks, and programs.

Why can I not select a variable in the Select Variable page?

Condition

A variable in the Select Variable page is grayed out and cannot be selected.

Cause

The format of the desired variable does not match the format expected by the field.

Remedy

Make sure the variable you are trying to select has the same type, schema, and unit as the field you are trying to fill.



Why are tiles missing in the visual programming interface?

Condition

The tiles cannot be found anywhere under the **Actions** menu on the **Program** page.

Cause of the trigger #1

The plugin associated with the missing tiles is not installed or is not activated.

Remedy for trigger #1

Procedure

1. Tap **Systems** > **Plugins** to see if the plugin associated with the missing actions is installed.

Option	Description
Plugin is not installed	Install the plugin.

2. Tap the plugin to access its Configurations page.

Option	Description
Run > is displayed	Plugin is not active. Tap Run to activate the plugin.
Stop Is displayed	Plugin is active.

3. Return to the **Program** page of the program where the issue occurred. The plugin is displayed on the page with all its available actions.

Cause of the trigger #2

A fault occurs in the arm.

Remedy for trigger #2

Procedure

- 1. Restart the program.
- 2. Refresh the page.

Related topics Installing plugins on page 175



Why can I not find a program in the list of programs?

Condition

A specific program is not found on the **Programs** page in Kortex Web App.



Note: This condition only happens when the user is an operator and is not an admin user.

Cause

The user is an operator and the admin user has not validated the program.

Remedy

The admin user must validate the program. After it is validated, the program appears in the list of programs for all users, including operators.

Why do some of the tiles of an imported program show a question mark?

Condition

A program is imported. One or more tiles on the **Program** page displays a question mark.

Cause

The imported program contains tiles from plugins that currently are not installed or activated on the controller.

Procedure

- 1. Remove the program from Kortex Web App.
- **2.** Install the missing plugins.
- 3. Activate the plugins.
- 4. Re-import the program.

Why are the Industrial I/O tiles not loading?

Condition

When trying to run a program that uses tiles from the Industrial I/O plugin, the Industrial I/O tile configuration does not load properly.



Cause

There is a bug that happens occasionally when the Industrial I/Os on the controller are connected to power when controller is already switched on.

Remedy

Force the Industrial I/O plugin to reinitialize by dragging any Industrial I/O tile anywhere in the program. Optionally, delete the tile and after the plugin re-initializes, add it back to the program.

Why is my program running, but not making progress?

Condition

A running program does not make any progress, but it is not interrupted and there are no faults being triggered.

Cause

A Wait or Wait for Input tile is not configured correctly.

Remedy

Validate the configuration of the Wait or Wait for Input tile. Their duration parameters are in seconds.

Why is my robot extremely slow?

Condition

A program is running a waypoint trajectory at an abnormally low speed.

Cause #1

The safety limits of the robot are configured to enforce low velocities.

Remedy #1

Switch off the arm and increase the velocity limits provided the risk assessment is not impacted by the change.

Cause #2

Constraints applied to the waypoint are forcing the robot to operate at lower speeds to make the trajectory feasible.



Remedy #2

Procedure

- · Validate that the local speed and acceleration limits of each waypoint are correct.
- Validate that the global waypoint trajectory speed and acceleration limits are correct.

Cause #3

When blending during the trajectory requires accelerations that are too fast, speed is automatically reduced so that it is feasible to travel the trajectory.

Remedy #3

Perform one or more of the actions to fix the situation.

- Increase the acceleration limits.
- Increase the size of the blending radius.
- Activate the **Optimal Blending** solution for the tile.

Issues related to Kortex Web App

Examples of issues related to *Kortex Web App* include such things as software and configuring problems.

Why is the robot not going to the programmed position?

Condition

The robot is programmed to go to specific locations. The robot is not moving to the expected locations.

Cause of the trigger #1

The tool is not configured correctly.

Remedy for trigger #1

Procedure

- 1. Tap **Systems > Tools** to access the **Tools** page.
- 2. Make sure the tool is added in the correct stacking position.
- **3.** Make sure all configurable parameters of the tool have the correct values.



Cause of the trigger #2

The robot is not calibrated.

Remedy for trigger #2

Procedure

- 1. Tap Systems > Robot > Arm.
- 2. Expand the Calibration pane.
- 3. Verify that the calibration status is Not Calibrated.
- 4. Tap Import in the Import calibration file panel to upload the calibration file to the robot.



Important: Contact support@kinova.ca if the administrator does not have a backup of the calibration file.

5. Verify that the calibration status is Calibrated

Related topics

Adding tools on page 182 Configuring tools on page 180 Configuring the arm for robot controls on page 187

Why is the computer not connecting to Kortex Web App?

Condition

The controller is on, but *Kortex Web App* is not displayed on the computer.

Cause #1

The Ethernet cable is not connected to the computer or the controller.

Remedy #1

Make sure one end of the Ethernet cable is connected to the controller and that the other end is connected to the computer.

Cause #2

The netmask of the Ethernet interface on the computer does not match the IP address of the controller.

Remedy #2

Make sure the netmask of your Ethernet interface is appropriate for the range of the two or more devices that are communicating with the robot. The default IP address of the controller is 192.168.1.10.



Cause #3

A user is logged on with the teach pendant.

Remedy #3

Make the user who is using the teach pendant log out.

Why is Kortex Web App not responding on my computer?

Condition

Kortex Web App is running on a computer, but there is no response from interacting with the application. The application behaves as if it were frozen.

Cause

The computer has memory performance issues.

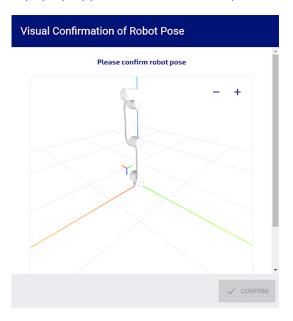
Remedy

Refresh the browser.

Why is there a pop-up requesting visual confirmation of the robot pose after the robot reboots?

Condition

A pop up appears after boot. It requests confirmation of pose of the robot.





Cause

After the robot is transported or when the robot is backdriven while it is switched off, a mismatch occurs between the last known position in memory and the current position.

Remedy

If the position of robot matches the visual representation, tap **CONFIRM**.

If the position of robot does not match the visual representation, do not confirm a mismatched pose. Contact support at support@kinova.ca for investigation.

Why do the +/- buttons on the wrist not work with my tool?

Condition

A plugin that is supposed to support controlling a tool with the end effector action (+/-) button on the wrist is running, but pressing the end effector action (+/-) button does not operate the tool.

Cause

The tool is not configured as active in the **Tools** page.

Remedy

Procedure

- 1. Navigate to Systems > Tools.
- 2. Drag the desired tool from the Inactive (drag & drop) list to the top of the Active tool list.



Note: The tool must be listed in the Inactive (drag & drop)" list before the *flange*.



Glossary

A

AC

type of electrical current alternating current (AC)

actuator

a device that is responsible for robot motion

administrator

a person who configures and uses the robot

synonym: admin user, admin

angular

refers to an object with joints and its rotational capabilities

arm

the part of the robot that is connected to the base and that moves

API

a software interface between the Kortex software and your own software Application Programming Interface(API) />)

AWG

a standardized wire gauge system; unit of measurement American Wire Gauge (AWG)

B

backdrive

to move the robot manually without using electrical power



base

the bottom-most part of the arm of the robot that is placed on a surface for installation; support of the robot

BCD

a way to represent each decimal digit in its binary equivalent using no more than 4 binary digits

Binary Coded Decimal (BCD)

bending radius

the radius of the inner-most curvature when bending an object, such as a cable; an object with a smaller radius have higher flexibility to bend before potentially becoming damaged

boot

to switch on, or start

С

camlock

a type of fastener

Cartesian

linear movement along the x, y, and z coordinate lines

collaborative

the ability for an integrated robot to work in a shared space, or in close proximity of people and other equipment, based on its integration

controller

the part of the robot from where the software operates

CPU

the portion of the computer that retrieves and performs instructions

central processing unit (CPU)

CRC

code that detects errors in changes to data

Cyclic redundancy check (CRC)



CRC

cUL

tested to Canadian standards by Underwriters' Laboratories

D

DC

type of electrical current

direct current (DC)

debounce

the act of ensuring one and only one signal is used when opening or closing a contact in an electronic device

DIN

a German standardization organization that is part of the ISO standards body

Deutsches Institut für Normung (DIN)

synonym: German Institute for Standardization

DoF

the number of variables needed to define the configuration of a robot, particularly for all the directions in which the motion can occur

degrees of freedom (DoF)

Ε

EFT

a series of quick, high frequency pulses often caused by a lack of electricity flowing through the circuitry

Electrical Fast Transient(EFT)

synonym: fast transient, burst



EFT/B

refer to EFT

elbow

the location of the 3rd actuator in the robot arm

EMI

the operation of an electronic device is disrupted by another electronic device that is nearby electromagnetic interference (EMI)

enabling device

a device used to send a signal to the robot that the user is going to move the robot either in Manual Jog mode or Hand Guiding mode.

synonym: pendant enabling device, wrist enabling device

end effector

the end of the arm of a robot; also, a tool or *flange* connected to the end of the arm of the robot

ESD

the sudden flow of electricity between two objects that have different charges

electrostatic discharge (ESD)

E-stop

a sudden removal of all electrical power to the entire robot

(E-stop)

synonym: SF01

F

firmware

in computers, it is low-level software that is programmed into read-only memory and is used directly by hardware

flange

a rim used for attaching another object



G

GPU

originally created to enhance graphic rendering, it also has proven itself useful in many other applications, such as artificial intelligence

```
graphics processing unit (GPU)
```

GUI

a way of interacting with a program of a computer that involves windows, dialogs, icons, and menus

Graphical User Interface (GUI)

synonym: human machine interface (HMI)

Η

hamburger menu

three vertical lines that, when tapped, expose a menu of actions or tasks from which the user can choose; usually used for main menus

synonym: menu, hamburger, main menu

hazard identification

the act of identifying all hazards that may cause harm

HMI

a way of interacting with a machine with such items as push buttons connected to a relay or a menu on a touch screen

```
human machine interface (HMI)
```

I

I/0

input output input output (I/O)



IEC

an organization that creates international standards for electrotechnology International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)

industrial I/O panel

a panel on the controller where the integrator connects external devices

integrator

a person who incorporates the robot in a larger system or environment

J

joint position

the rotational position of a joint, measured in °

synonym: SF03

joint speed

the velocity at which the joint rotates, measured in °/s

synonym: SF04

K

kebab menu

three vertical dots that, when tapped, expose a menu of actions or tasks from which the user can choose; usually used for contextual menus

synonym: contextual menu, menu options, options, menu

Kortex Web App

the *GUI* that runs on a web server on the *controller* and is accessed on the *teach pendant* or on an external computer

synonym: Web App



L

Lockout Tagout

safety procedure where power is removed from the machinery, one or more locks is placed on the power supplies, and a tag is added to the lock with the name or initials of the worker who locked out the machinery

Lockout Tagout (LOTO)

LSB

the right-most bit in a binary number

Least Significant Bit (LSB)

\mathbf{M}

MAC

unique identifier, similar to a room number inside a hotel

MCU

a device used in the actuators to read sensors and report sensor information

Main Control Unit (MCU)

microcontroller

in computers, a miniature computer integrated on a computer chip; often has firmware installed on it

mode

describes how a function is performed

Monitored stop

the robot is not moving, has power, and is actively monitoring that it is not doing anything

MPU

a device in the controller that manages external communication and inverse kinematics, sends commands to each actuator, and collects information from all other devices

Main Processing Unit (MPU)



Ν

namespace

a way in computer science of grouping together all objects that work together such that each object has a unique name

NC

electricity flows through a contact in its normal state

Normally Closed (NC)

non-blocking

the ability for a robotic program to proceed to its next step even when the current, non-blocking, action is not finished

non-collaborative

the inability for the robot to work in a shared space, or in close proximity of people and other equipment; the need for the robot to be in an enclosed, self-contained area to operate safely

NPN

the meanings of binary signal levels are interchanged such that high voltage is 0 and low voltage is 1

Negative logic (NPN)

0

operator

a person who uses, but who does not configure, the robot

OSSD

a device that outputs a signal to shut down the machine; used as part of a safety system of a machine

Output Signal Switching Device (OSSD)

Ρ

payload

the load the robot carries excluding the tool that the robot carries



PCB

a structure that is made up of conductive and insulating layers printed circuit board (PCB)

PE

a system that connects a power supply with the ground protective earth (PE)

synonym: ground

pendant enabling device

enabling device located on a teach pendant, usually as a button enabling device on page 365

synonym: enabling device, teach pendant enabling device

pendant

a device used to configure and control the movements of a robot

synonym: teach pendant

pinch point

an area in which a body part can get in between a stationary part and a moving part of the machinery

PLC

an industrial computer used in controlling manufacturing processes

```
programmable logic controller (PLC)
```

PLd

Performance Level D

Performance Level d (PLd)

plugin

software that is added to an pre-existing base software so as to give the application additional capabilities



program sequence

the sequence of actions that a program must use to complete its task

program sequence

synonym: program

protection zone

an area where the robot cannot enter

synonym: SF06

protective stop

a stop in which the robot stops, but there still is power in the robot

synonym: SF02

R

RAM

the memory of the computer that stores data for the *CPU* to use random access memory (RAM)

reboot

to restart the computer

risk analysis

a study of the potential dangers in using something, often equipment

risk control

the plan to avoid or lessen the risk involved

RJ45

a jack with 8 pins

robot

refers to the computer or teach pendant, controller, arm, and end end effector; alternatively, refers to just the arm and the tools attached to it



robot cell

a set of one or more machines that work in conjunction with one or more programmable robots

robot system

an entire automated system consisting entirely of robots or automated equipment

role

the position held that is capable of performing a specific set of tasks

RS-485

a standard that defines electrical traits that are used in serial communication systems

RTU

an electronic device controlled by microprocessors that interfaces with other systems and is used to send and receive data

remote terminal unit (RTU)

S

safety mode

one of two speeds that are used when determining the maximum speed at which the robot can operate

SC2

stop category 2

synonym: protective stop

scope

in computer science, the area of code that is valid within the confines of another area of code

SCU

a processor in the controller that processes all safety functions

Safety Control Unit (SCU)

state

describes the overall condition of the system, in our case Link 6



stop category

a type of safety control function stop category (SC)

SWU

a file format, used by Kinova, to package firmware updates firmware update package (SWU)

Т

TCP

the position and orientation of the tool Tool Center Point (TCP)

TCP/IP

set of communication protocols used in computer networks and in the Internet Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)

teach pendant

a device used to configure and control the movements of a robot

synonym: pendant

teach pendant enabling device

enabling device located on a teach pendant, usually as a button enabling device on page 365

synonym: enabling device, pendant enabling device

U

UL

Underwriters Laboratories Inc., an organization dedicated to testing and creating standards for electrical products

Underwriters Laboratories (UL)



USB

industry computer bus standard that makes it easier to transfer data between computers Universal Serial Bus (USB)

W

wrist

the part found at the end of the robot arm to which end effectors may be attached

wrist enabling device

enabling device located on the wrist of the robot, usually as a button enabling device on page 365

synonym: enabling device

wrist I/O

the area of connector on the wrist where the integrator connects external devices

wrist ring

the LED ring found around the wrist



TOGETHER IN ROBOTICS



PROUDLY MADE IN QUEBEC, CANADA

EN-UG-020-Link-6-r2.0-202301



kinovarobotics.com | info@kinovarobotics.com | +1 (855) 654–6682 © Kinova inc 2022. All rights reserved. ¹Intel, the Intel logo, and Intel Core are trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries.